

8.
GRADE

STEP
BY STEP
ENGLISH

The **Champion**

English

NEW GENERATION

REFERENCE BOOK WITH ACTIVITIES

READING
GRAMMAR
VOCABULARY

ADOPTED TO
INTERACTIVE WHITEBOARDS &
MOBILE DEVICES

INSTRUCTIVE
QUESTIONS

NOW
IT IS TIME
TO LEARN AND
PRACTISE!

NEW
GENERATION
QUESTIONS

EXERCISES
UNIT TESTS

Gülistan Yıldız Menteş
Salih Özdemir
Mustafa Erişgen

ALTIN NOKTA

NAQTTEST

FOCUS ON YOUR GOALS
AND MOVE FORWARD!



Copyright©NARTEST
ISBN 978-605-2043-70-7

KAYNAK KİTAPLAR
8. SINIF TANE TANE İNGİLİZCE SORU BANKASI

Bu kitabın her hakkı saklıdır.
Tüm hakları NARTEST YAYINEVİ'ne aittir.
Kısmen de olsa alıntı yapılamaz. Metinler, kitabı yayımlayan kurumun önceden izni olmaksızın elektronik, mekanik, fotokopi ya da herhangi bir kayıt sistemiyle çoğaltılamaz, yayımlanamaz. Kitapta yer alan oyun, bulmaca, soru, metin ve resimlerin sorumluluğu yazarına/yazarlarına aittir.

Genel Yayın Yönetmeni
Halil İ. AKÇETİN

Yayın Editörü
Leyla GÜNDOĞDU

Dizgi & Kapak
Altın Nokta Grafik

Yayın - Dağıtım
Altın Nokta Basım Yayın Dağıtım
3/18 Sokak No: 2/N BUCA - İZMİR
+90 232 502 52 94 / +90 507 470 24 98

www.nartest.com.tr - www.altinnokta.com.tr
www.nokta2000.com - www.kitapana.com.tr
www.bilimselkitaplar.net

nartest@nartest.com.tr - altinnokta@altinnokta.com.tr
nokta@nokta2000.com - kitapana@kitapana.com.tr
destek@bilimselkitaplar.net

Basım
Birleşik Matbaacılık
Buca OSB Mah. 3/20 Sk. No:17 K:-3 Buca / İZMİR
Tel: 0 232 433 68 66 Sertifika No: 14892

Eylül – 2020
2. Basım

ÖN SÖZ

Değerli meslektaşlarımız ve sevgili öğrenciler,

Tane Tane Öğreniyoruz

Kitabımız, İngilizce dersini daha eğlenceli ve öğrenilebilir bir hale getirmek için Milli Eğitim Bakanlığı'nın yayımlamış olduğu kazanımlara uygun olarak büyük bir emek sonucunda hazırlanmıştır. Bu kapsamda kitabımızda, konunun öğrenciler tarafından daha iyi öğrenilmesini sağlamak için kazanımlara uygun olarak hazırlanmış konu anlatımlı bölümler, MEB ders kitaplarına paralel olarak hazırlanmış tane tane kazanım testleri ve ünite değerlendirme testleri bulunmaktadır. Ayrıca kitabımız, MEB tarafından yayımlanan örnek sorular ve Liseye Geçiş Sınavı'nda sorulan sorulara uygun olarak hazırladığımız yeni nesil sorular içermektedir. Kitabımızda konuların öğrencilerimiz tarafından tane tane öğrenilmesi, öğretmenlerimizin de kitabımızı kaynak kitap olarak kullanması temel hedeflerimizden biridir. Konuların öğrenme aşamalarından sonraki destekleyici alıştırmaların öğrencilerin okuduğunu anlama, yorum yapabilme becerilerinin yanında analiz, sentez ve muhakeme yeteneklerinin gelişmesini sağlamak amacıyla hazırlandı. Her ünite sonunda hazırladığımız ve yeni nesil sorulardan oluşan testlerle ezberci anlayıştan uzak, verilen bilgilerin doğru yorumlanması mantığına dayandığından bu kitabımızda daha çok yorumlama, düşünme ve analiz etme becerilerini geliştirecek sorulara yer verdik.

Kitabımız şu bölümlerden oluşmaktadır:

Vocabulary (Kelime) : Ünite içerisinde geçen kelimeleri anlamlı gruplara ayırarak hem öğretmenin hem de öğrencinin işini kolaylaştıracak sistematik bir bakış açısı oluşturduk. Her kelime grubunu eğlenceli ve öğretici alıştırmalarla destekledik. Bu kelime çalışmaları öğrencilerin diğer bölümlere geçişini kolaylaştıracaktır. Ayrıca verilen kelime listeleri kitap boyunca öğrencilerimizin ve öğretmenlerimizin başvurabilecekleri bir kaynak niteliğindedir. Her kelime bölümünün sonunda 20 sorudan oluşan Vocabulary Test ile konunun pekiştirilmesi için hazırlandı. Bu bölüm öğretmen tarafından ödev olarak verilebileceği gibi sınıf ortamında da öğrencilerin kelime bilgilerini ölçmek için de kullanılabilir.

Grammar (Dilbilgisi): Her üniteye geçen MEB müfredatındaki kazanımları baz alarak hazırladığımız bu bölümde önce hedefteki konunun tablolul anlatımı ve kısa özeti geçmektedir. Her kazanım çeşitli alıştırmalarla pekiştirilmek için hazırlandı. Öğrencilerimiz dilbilgisi becerilerini öğrenme ve pekiştirme yöntemiyle geliştirileceklerdir. Bu bölümün sonunda 20 sorudan oluşan Grammar Test ünite boyunca geçen bütün kazanımları ele alarak pekiştirme ve değerlendirme amacıyla hazırlanmıştır. Bu bölüm öğretmenlerimiz tarafından ödev olarak verilebileceği gibi sınıf ortamında da öğrencilerin dilbilgisi becerilerini ölçmek için kullanılabilir. Öğretmenlerimiz, bu testlerle genel duruma bakarak öğrencilerinin konuyu öğrenme düzeylerini belirleyebilir ve gereken müdahaleleri zaman kaybetmeden yapabilirler.

Reading (Okuma): Bu bölüm üniteyle ilgili metnin yorumlanmasını ve analiz edilmesini sağlayan yeni nesil sorulardan oluşmaktadır. Bu bölümde öğrencilerimiz hem kelime becerilerini hem dilbilgisi becerilerini hem de analiz-sentez becerilerini pekiştirmiş olacaklardır.

Unit Test: Sözel mantık ve muhakeme, yorumlama, çıkarımda bulunma, tablo yorumlama, grafik okuma ve yorumlama becerilerini ortaya çıkaran soruların olduğu bu bölüm MEB tarafından yayımlanan örnek sorular ve 2020 Haziran ayındaki Liseye Geçiş Sınavı'nda sorulan sorular örnek alınarak hazırlanmıştır.

Ayrıca her ünitenin başında ünite içerisinde geçen kalıpsal ifadelerin listesini 'Common Expressions' adı altında verdik. Bunun da destekleyici bir bölüm olduğuna inanıyoruz.

Sevgili öğrencilerimiz, sınavda başarılı olmak akılcı, planlı ve verimli çalışmaktan geçmektedir.

Bunun yanında sınava hazırlanırken kullanacağınız kaynaklar da çok önemli bir noktadır.

Sınava hazırlanma konusunda en doğru tercihi yaparak aldığınız bu kitap İngilizce dersi açısından hedeflediğiniz başarıya ulaşmanızı sağlayacaktır.

Çok titiz bir çalışmanın ürünü olan kitabımızın tüm meslektaşlarımıza ve öğrencilerimize faydalı olması temenni ederiz.

İngilizce Yazarları



CONTENTS

UNIT 1 FRIENDSHIP

Vocabulary 1	9
Vocabulary 2	11
Vocabulary 3	13
Vocabulary 4	16
Vocabulary Test	19
Grammar 1	21
Grammar 2	29
Grammar Test	30
Reading	32
Unit Test	33

UNIT 2 TEEN LIFE

Vocabulary 1	38
Vocabulary 2	40
Vocabulary 3	41
Vocabulary 4	44
Vocabulary 5	45
Vocabulary 6	47
Vocabulary Test	50
Grammar 1	52
Grammar 2	54
Grammar 3	56
Grammar 4	58
Grammar Test	60
Reading	62
Unit Test	63

UNIT 3 IN THE KITCHEN

Vocabulary 1	69
Vocabulary 2	71
Vocabulary 3	72
Vocabulary 4	73
Vocabulary 5	75
Vocabulary 6	78
Vocabulary 7	80
Vocabulary 8	82

Vocabulary Test	84
Grammar 1	86
Grammar 2	88
Grammar 3	89
Grammar Test	92
Reading	94
Unit Test	95

UNIT 4 ON THE PHONE

Vocabulary 1	101
Vocabulary 2	103
Vocabulary 3	105
Vocabulary 4	106
Vocabulary 5	108
Vocabulary Test	109
Grammar 1	111
Grammar 2	113
Grammar Test	114
Reading	116
Unit Test	117

UNIT 5 THE INTERNET

Vocabulary 1	123
Vocabulary 2	125
Vocabulary 3	127
Vocabulary 4	129
Vocabulary Test	131
Grammar 1	133
Grammar 2	136
Grammar Test	137
Reading	139
Unit Test	140

UNIT 6 ADVENTURES

Vocabulary 1	145
Vocabulary 2	147
Vocabulary 3	149
Vocabulary 4	151
Vocabulary 5	153
Vocabulary 6	155
Vocabulary Test	157
Grammar 1	159
Grammar 2	162
Grammar Test	164
Reading	166
Unit Test	167

UNIT 7 TOURISM

Vocabulary 1	173
Vocabulary 2	175
Vocabulary 3	177
Vocabulary 4	178
Vocabulary 5	180
Vocabulary Test	183
Grammar 1	185
Grammar 2	188
Grammar 3	190
Grammar 4	191
Grammar 5	192
Grammar Test	194
Reading	196
Unit Test	197

UNIT 8 CHORES

Vocabulary 1	203
Vocabulary 2	205
Vocabulary 3	207
Vocabulary 4	209

Vocabulary Test	211
Grammar 1	213
Grammar 2	215
Grammar Test	218
Reading	220
Unit Test	221

UNIT 9 SCIENCE

Vocabulary 1	227
Vocabulary 2	228
Vocabulary 3	230
Vocabulary 4	233
Vocabulary 5	235
Vocabulary Test	237
Grammar 1	239
Grammar 2	240
Grammar Test	243
Reading	245
Unit Test	246

UNIT 10 NATURAL FORCES

Vocabulary 1	251
Vocabulary 2	253
Vocabulary 3	255
Vocabulary 4	257
Vocabulary 5	259
Vocabulary Test	261
Grammar	263
Grammar Test	265
Reading	267
Unit Test	268
ANSWER KEY	271

FRIENDSHIP

*The only way to have a friend is to be one.
Ralph Waldo Emerson*



We are going to learn :

- 📌 apologizing
- 📌 giving explanations / reasons
- 📌 accepting and refusing
- 📌 making simple inquiries

UNIT 1

UNIT 1 FRIENDSHIP

Common Expressions

I'd love to, but I'm busy.

I'd love to, but I feel ill.

I'm sorry, but I can't.

I'm so busy, but I can't refuse it.

Yeah, why not?

No, thanks. I am full / stuffed.

Would you like to go to the theatre?

Are you doing anything at the weekend?

Are you busy tomorrow afternoon?

Why don't we have a barbecue next week?

How about going to the cinema this Saturday?

Thanks for the invitation.

That would be great.

That sounds fun.

That sounds awesome.

We get on well with each other.

I'm interested in football.

We will have lots of fun.

İsterdim ama meşgulüm.

İsterdim ama hastayım.

Üzgünüm ama yapamam.

Çok meşgulüm ama bunu reddedemem.

Evet, neden olmasın?

Hayır, teşekkürler. Tokum.

Tiyatroya gitmek ister misin?

Hafta sonu bir şey yapacak mısın?

Yarın öğleden sonra meşgul müsün?

Gelecek hafta neden barbekü yapmıyoruz?

Bu cumartesi sinemaya gitmeye ne dersin?

Davet için teşekkürler.

Harika olurdu.

Kulağa eğlenceli geliyor.

Kulağa harika geliyor.

Biz birbirimizle iyi anlaşırız.

Futbola ilgim var.

Çok eğleneceğiz.



VOCABULARY 1

TYPES OF MOVIE

romance movie	→	romantik, duygusal film
science-fiction movie	→	bilim kurgu filmi
comedy movie	→	komedi filmi
animation movie	→	animasyon filmi
western movie	→	kovboy filmi
drama movie	→	dram filmi
thriller movie	→	gerilim filmi
action movie	→	aksiyon filmi



EXERCISES

1

Write the names of the movies under the pictures.

- drama animation thriller
 comedy western science fiction

1.



comedy

2.



science fiction

3.



animation

4.



drama

5.



western

6.



thriller

2

Complete the sentences with the words below.

- western romance thriller
 animation science fiction

- Kate likes **romance** movies because she is interested in love stories.
- I enjoy **fiction** films because I am interested in space and aliens.
- Small children usually enjoy watching **animation** films.
- I saw a great **western** movie at the cinema yesterday. It was about the life of a cowboy in the 1960s.
- My sister thinks **thriller** movies are exciting, but I hate them. They make me feel nervous.



ADJECTIVES



busy	→	meşgul, yoğun
fun	→	eğlenceli
relaxed	→	rahat
calm	→	sakin
cool	→	havalı
stuffed	→	tıka basa tok
attractive	→	çekici
informal	→	resmi olmayan
hungry	→	aç

awesome	→	harika, müthiş
laid-back	→	umursamaz, tasasız
honest	→	dürüst
funny	→	komik
full	→	tok
fashionable	→	modaya uygun
hidden	→	gizli
daily	→	günlük
great	→	harika



EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- Linda never gets worried or anxious. She is so **laid-back** / **funny**.
- My brother usually enjoys eating pizza, but he is **informal** / **stuffed** now.
- Matilda doesn't seem **relaxed** / **daily**. I think she has a serious problem.
- I can meet my classmates tomorrow because I won't be **fashionable** / **busy**.
- Marie is so fashionable, and everybody finds her **cool** / **hidden**.
- Having a barbecue sounds **hungry** / **fun** for this weekend.
- I think thriller movies are **awesome** / **calm**. I enjoy watching them.
- My mother is cooking a delicious meal in the kitchen, but I can't eat anything. I'm really **full** / **hungry**.

2

Complete the sentences with the adjectives below.

- honest funny daily
- hidden attractive great
- informal

- You shouldn't keep your true feelings **hidden**. You can share them with me.
- Close friends usually have **informal** conversations when they meet.
- Every day, I meet my friends at a café. We usually talk about **daily** matters.
- My sister likes animation movies. She thinks they are **great**.
- Wow! You look so **attractive** and beautiful in this dress!
- Some comedy movies aren't **funny** at all. They are boring.
- My best friend never tells lies. She is **honest**.

VOCABULARY 2

ACTIVITIES

- have a picnic ~~~~~> piknik yapmak
play sports ~~~~~> spor yapmak
go to a concert ~~~~~> konsere gitmek
go to the theatre ~~~~~> tiyatroya gitmek
play football ~~~~~> futbol oynamak
have a party ~~~~~> parti yapmak
go to an exhibition ~~~~~> sergiye gitmek
make a sculpture ~~~~~> heykel yapmak
have a barbecue ~~~~~> mangal yapmak
go cycling ~~~~~> bisiklet sürmeye gitmek
go skating ~~~~~> paten yapmaya gitmek
see a play ~~~~~> tiyatro oyunu izlemek
eat out ~~~~~> dışarıda yemek yemek
meet friends ~~~~~> arkadaşlarla görüşmek
watch a movie ~~~~~> film izlemek



LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1 Match the pictures to the activities.

- a. eat out
d. see a play

- b. make a sculpture
e. go to a concert

- c. go to an exhibition
f. have a party

1.



e

2.



a

3.



f

4.



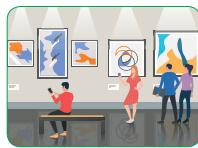
d

5.



b

6.



c

2

Complete the sentences with the activities below.

go to the theatre

have a picnic

play football

go skating

play sports

go to a concert

watch a movie

1. Every week, I watch a movie with Ali. Thrillers and science fictions are our favourite.
2. Melissa and Jessica are very active. They always play sports. Basketball is their favourite.
3. Children should never go skating without wearing a helmet.
4. Julia is making some sandwiches in the kitchen because she's going to have a picnic with her family.
5. I'm interested in team sports. That's why I play football every day.
6. Why don't we go to the theatre and see a play?
7. Jack and Daniel love music. They go to a concert every Saturday.

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. After school, I go skating / have a barbecue in the park. It's an exciting activity because I move very fast.
2. If you're keen on the theatre, we can see a play / go to an exhibition next Sunday.
3. Oscar isn't going to go to the cinema / eat out with us because he is stuffed.
4. I never miss music events. I'm going to go to a concert / have a picnic with my classmates tomorrow.
5. They want to go to an exhibition / go to the theatre. They're interested in paintings and drawings.
6. Every evening, Henry meets his friends / watches a movie on television alone.
7. We are playing football / seeing a play tonight. It is about French culture.
8. We should celebrate your graduation. How about making a sculpture / having a party?
9. My father is 55 years old, but he has an active lifestyle. He plays sports / sees a play at the weekend. Football is his favourite.
10. He is so sociable. He meets his friends / goes cycling every day.

VOCABULARY 3

NOUNS

concert ~~~> konser	enemy ~~~> düşman	project ~~~> proje
café ~~~> kafe	secret ~~~> sır	attention ~~~> dikkat
interest ~~~> ilgi	truth ~~~> doğru	movie ~~~> film
invitation ~~~> davet	glove ~~~> eldiven	tournament ~~~> turnuva
sender ~~~> gönderen	receiver ~~~> alıcı	event ~~~> aktivite, olay
birthday ~~~> doğum günü	singer ~~~> şarkıcı	hobby ~~~> hobi
excuse ~~~> bahane	reason ~~~> sebep	art ~~~> sanat
matter ~~~> sorun	request ~~~> istek	conversation ~~~> konuşma
topic ~~~> konu	manner ~~~> tavır, davranış	character ~~~> karakter
space ~~~> uzay	exam ~~~> sınav	knowledge ~~~> bilgi
mate ~~~> arkadaş	buddy ~~~> dost	classmate ~~~> sınıf arkadaşı
drawing ~~~> resim çizme, çizim		
painting ~~~> resim yapma, tablo		
hometown ~~~> doğup büyüdüğümüz yer/şehir/kasaba		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Look at the pictures below and put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

1.



singer (grenis)

2.



classmate (smastelac)

3.



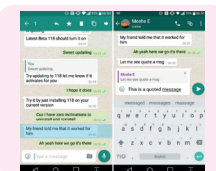
buddy (dudyb)

4.



invitation (nvoititan)

5.



conversation (toniscarenov)

6.



space (aespç)

2

Complete the sentences with the nouns below.

 interests

 art

 topic

 manner

 project

 request

 secret

- I don't know the topic. What are they talking about?
- This is a secret between us. Don't tell anyone!
- Dora is interested in art. She likes visiting exhibitions and seeing new paintings.
- It's a bad manner to tell lies.
- She is busy today. She is trying to finish her science project.
- Mark and I share the same interests. We like playing sports, going to the theatre and cycling.
- We are going to clean the classroom all together. This is our teacher's request.

3

Match the words to the definitions.

- concert 3 a. the anniversary of the day on which a person was born
- enemy 4 b. a false reason
- birthday 5 c. the cause of something
- excuse 2 d. a person who hates another person
- reason 1 e. a music performance given in public
- knowledge 6 f. information or understanding that we get by study or experience

4

Fill in the blanks with the words below.

 drawing

 classmate

 mate

 character

 excuse

 sender

- I got a letter yesterday, but I don't know the sender.
- Alison enjoys drawing pictures every day.
- Paul is a laid-back person. He is relaxed in manner and character.
- Jack won't attend the party, but I don't know his excuse.
- Fred is my best classmate. He sits next to me in the class.
- Kevin is a great mate. I enjoy spending time with him.

VOCABULARY 4

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

true friend	gerçek arkadaş	book fair	kitap fuarı
close friend	yakın arkadaş	similar interests	benzer ilgi alanları
art exhibition	sanat sergisi	shopping mall	alışveriş merkezi
best friend	en iyi arkadaş	daily matters	günlük meseleler
sports club	spor kulübü	great buddy	çok iyi dost
fruit juice	meyve suyu	bowling tournament	bowling turnuvası
bowling alley	bowling pisti	concert hall	konser alanı
science exam	fen bilgisi sınavı	jazz concert	caz konseri
informal conversation	resmi olmayan konuşma		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- I'm very busy tomorrow because I'm going to study for my **science exam** / **sports club**.
- This **concert hall** / **jazz concert** is very big. It has 5000 seats.
- There are interesting paintings and sculptures at the new **art exhibition** / **bowling alley**.
- Mustafa and Salih share **similar interests** / **best friends**. They both like sports.
- Alex is a **concert hall** / **great buddy**. I enjoy spending time with him.
- This **shopping mall** / **concert hall** is very big! You can buy anything you need there.
- A **sports club** / **true friend** always keeps your secrets.
- Close friends like having **informal conversations** / **bowling alleys**.

2

Match the halves of the noun/adjective phrases.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------------|
| 1. science | <u>k</u> | a. alley |
| 2. informal | <u>e</u> | b. matters |
| 3. bowling | <u>a</u> | c. buddy |
| 4. close | <u>m</u> | d. interests |
| 5. art | <u>f</u> | e. conversation |
| 6. similar | <u>d</u> | f. exhibition |
| 7. concert | <u>h</u> | g. mall |
| 8. sports | <u>l</u> | h. hall |
| 9. jazz | <u>j</u> | i. juice |
| 10. fruit | <u>i</u> | j. concert |
| 11. book | <u>o</u> | k. exam |
| 12. shopping | <u>g</u> | l. club |
| 13. great | <u>c</u> | m. friend |
| 14. daily | <u>b</u> | o. fair |

VOCABULARY 5

VERBS

support ~~~> desteklemek

meet ~~~> görüşmek

trust ~~~> güvenmek

mind ~~~> önemsemek

spend ~~~> harcamak

accept ~~~> kabul etmek

organise ~~~> organize etmek

bring ~~~> getirmek

attend ~~~> katılmak

miss ~~~> kaçırmak, özlemek

involve ~~~> dahil olmak

buy ~~~> satın almak

study ~~~> ders çalışmak

chit-chat ~~~> sohbet etmek

share ~~~> paylaşmak

sound ~~~> ses vermek, (kulağa) gibi gelmek

argue ~~~> tartışmak

attract ~~~> ilgi çekmek

invite ~~~> davet etmek

watch ~~~> izlemek

join ~~~> katılmak

hope ~~~> ummak, umut etmek

refuse ~~~> reddetmek

discuss ~~~> tartışmak

explain ~~~> açıklamak

visit ~~~> ziyaret etmek

apologise ~~~> özür dilemek

suppose ~~~> farz etmek

EXERCISES

1

Match the words to the pictures.

a. accept d. miss g. watch

b. discuss e. support h. chit-chat

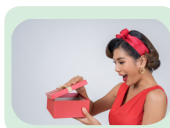
c. study f. share

1.



h

2.



a

3.



g

4.



f

5.



e

6.



d

7.



c

8.



b

2

Complete the sentences with the verbs below.

- refuse mind organise
 trust argue explain

- Our teachers organise a tennis tournament in our school garden every year. Lots of students take part in the event.
- I trust Zoe because she can keep a secret.
- Melih always invites me to go to the theatre with him, but I refuse his invitation because I hate plays.
- Rose's sons always mind others. They are great.
- I don't understand. I'll be happy if you explain more.
- Sarah and Fernando get on well with each other. They never argue.

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- You should organise activities that **mind** / **involve** other children in learning.
- I **hope** / **bring** Hannah will come to my birthday party.
- We're going cycling tomorrow. Don't forget to **bring** / **miss** your helmet.
- Kyla won't **study** / **join** us because she is going to visit her cousin.
- Parties and big events don't **attract** / **argue** me.
- I **suppose** / **explain** our new classmate is nice and friendly.
- You should **apologise** / **refuse** to people when you hurt their feelings.
- I must study for my science exam. I'm afraid I can't **sound** / **attend** the event.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

4

Put the letters into the correct order to find the verbs. Then complete the sentences.

- Somebody stole my bag yesterday. I have to buy (ybu) a new one.
- His offer is excellent! I can't refuse (seufre) it.
- I've got some money. Now it is time to spend (ednsp) it.
- Let's meet (etem) at a café and chit-chat.
- Jack and Gary are great mates. They always support (porsupt) me.
- She is going to explain (lianxpe) the topic again because nobody understood it.
- Jessica wants to visit (istiv) her aunt in Cambridge next month.
- You miss (isms) the bus every day because you get up late.

VOCABULARY 6

VERB PHRASES

get on well with someone → biriyle iyi anlaşmak	attract attention → ilgi çekmek
back up → desteklemek	count on → güvenmek
keep a secret → sır tutmak	tell the truth → doğruyu söylemek
tell lies → yalan söylemek	spend time together → birlikte vakit geçirmek
come over → uğramak	have fun → eğlenmek
be interested in → ilgilenmek	miss a chance → şansı kaçırmak
eat out → dışarıda yemek yemek	pick up someone → birini bir yerden almak

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. He is an honest boy. He always **tells the truth** / has fun.
2. I'm very hungry. Let's **come over** / eat out.
3. She is a true friend. She always **backs me up** / tells lies.
4. There is a great art exhibition in the city centre. You shouldn't **be interested in** / miss the chance.
5. True friends always **attract attention** / get on well with each other.
6. What time shall I **pick you up** / keep a secret?

2

Match the phrases with their definitions.

- | | | |
|---|----------|-------------------|
| 1. to support someone | <u>2</u> | a. come over |
| 2. to visit somewhere | <u>5</u> | b. miss a chance |
| 3. to spend time happily | <u>6</u> | c. keep a secret |
| 4. to tell the real information | <u>1</u> | d. back up |
| 5. to let an opportunity go away | <u>3</u> | e. have fun |
| 6. to hide a piece of private information | <u>4</u> | f. tell the truth |

1-12 : For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. **Ahmet** : Are you _____ tomorrow?
Linda : Yes, I am. I'm going to study for my science project in the library.
 A) free B) busy
 C) home D) study
2. **Sally** : Why don't we have a picnic this weekend?
Nacho : That sounds _____, but I can't because I'm going to visit my cousin.
 A) terrible B) bad
 C) fun D) busy
3. **Frank** : Would you like to _____ at a café?
Yunus : Yes, that would be awesome.
 A) see a play B) have a barbecue
 C) chit-chat D) go to an exhibition
4. Mert is an attractive man. He wears _____ and fashionable clothes.
 A) cool B) hidden
 C) calm D) enemy
5. **Suna** : How about going to the theatre?
Lara : Yes, that would be great. Can you _____ me _____ at 6 p.m.?
 A) pick / up B) count / out
 C) back / up D) come / over
6. **Hande** : Would you like some pizza?
Nelly : No, thanks, I'm _____.
 A) hungry B) stuffed
 C) busy D) fun

7. **Teresa** : I'm going to go to the _____ tomorrow. I have two tickets. Would you like to join me?
Mark : That sounds awesome. I love music events.
 A) art exhibition B) rock concert
 C) bowling alley D) shopping

8. I'm interested in _____ movies.
 A) chance B) western
 C) receiver D) rock

9.



Riza

Shall we play football in the afternoon?



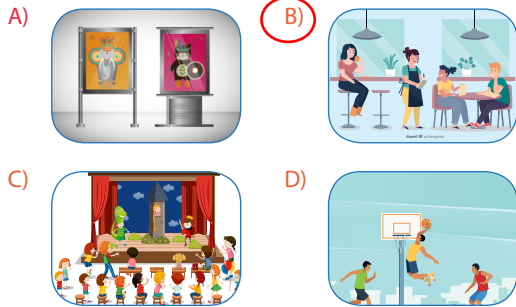
Selim

I'm sorry, but I can't. I'm going to _____ a party.

- A) refuse B) attend
 C) discuss D) miss
10. Rita is very excited because she's going to her favourite singer's _____.
 A) matter B) excuse
 C) concert D) hometown
11. I never go to concerts because I'm not interested in music _____.
 A) sports teams B) events
 C) tournaments D) sculptures
12. **Umüt** : Look! There is an invitation card here. The sender is Mustafa.
Rose : Who is the _____? I think it is for me.
 A) buddy B) letter
 C) invitation D) receiver

13. - go skating
 - go to an art exhibition
 - see a play
 - play sports

Which picture IS NOT related to the list?



14. Max is my enemy. He never tells me lies. I count on him because he keeps my secrets.

Which underlined word is ODD?

- A) enemy B) lies
 C) count on D) secrets

15. Oxford is my manner because I was born and spent my childhood there.

The underlined word is WRONG. Which word can we replace with it?

- A) truth B) chance
 C) hometown D) fashion

16. 1. back a. on well with somebody
 2. get b. up someone
 3. count c. out
 4. eat d. on somebody

Match the halves of the phrases.

- A) 1 - b / 2 - a / 3 - c / 4 - d
 B) 1 - b / 2 - c / 3 - a / 4 - d
 C) 1 - d / 2 - c / 3 - b / 4 - a
 D) 1 - b / 2 - a / 3 - d / 4 - c

17.



I like comedy, animation and science-fiction movies.

Kuzey

Which picture DOES NOT show one of Kuzey's favourite movie types?



18.



Marta is my _____ friend. I enjoy spending time with her.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) true B) space
 C) close D) best

19. I think Patrick is a great _____. He never upsets other people.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the gap?

- A) mate B) classmate
 C) knowledge D) buddy

20. _____ ? _____

- get on well with each other
- share the same hobbies and interests
- support each other
- keep each other's secrets

Circle the best title for the list.

- A) Enemies B) True Friends
 C) Daily Matters D) Reasons and Excuses

GRAMMAR 1

ACCEPTING AND REFUSING / APOLOGISING / GIVING EXPLANATIONS AND REASONS

FUTURE PLANS / ARRANGEMENTS

" Present Continuous "

- We mainly use the present continuous to talk about an action that is happening at the moment of speaking.

Example : Judy is baking a birthday cake in the kitchen now.

- We also use this tense to talk about future plans or arrangements.

Example : We are going to a concert tomorrow.



Affirmative (+)

I You He She It	am are is is is	studying English tomorrow.
We You They	are are are	studying English tomorrow.



Negative (-)

I You He She It	am not / 'm not are not / 're not is not / isn't is not / isn't is not / isn't	studying English tomorrow.
We You They	are not / 're not are not / 're not are not / 're not	studying English tomorrow.



Question (?)

Am Are Is Is Is	I you he she it	studying English tomorrow?
Are Are Are	we you they	studying English tomorrow?



Short Answers

Yes, I am. / No, I'm not. Yes, you are. / No, you are not. Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. Yes, she is. / No, she isn't. Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.
Yes, we are. / No, we aren't. Yes, you are. / No, you aren't. Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

Time expressions: tonight, tomorrow, next (Friday), on (Sunday), in July, next week, next month



ATTENTION !

We use question words with the present continuous tense for making inquiries.

Examples : When is Fred visiting his grandparents?
Where are they going tomorrow?



EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- Milena **is / are** working tomorrow. She can't play basketball with us.
- Daniel and Susan **aren't / isn't** attending the birthday party next week.
- Am / Are** they going to the cinema next Saturday?
- The children **is / are** playing basketball tomorrow.
- When **are / is** you visiting your grandparents?
- My friends **are / is** meeting in front of the cinema today.
- Ryan **is / am** joining a big music event next June.
- Are / Is** you having a picnic with your family next Tuesday?
- We **is / are** leaving this town at half past three on Monday.

2

Fill in the blanks with the verbs given in the brackets. Use the correct forms of the present continuous tense.

- This city makes me happy. Every week, I attend an activity. I **am going** (go) skating with my new friends next Saturday.
- Many people **are joining** (join) the jazz concert tomorrow.
- Kazim **is organizing** (organize) a party for his best friend's birthday.
- My friends and I **are chit-chatting** (chit-chat) at a café at noon next Tuesday.
- I have a long film list. Tonight, I **am watching** (watch) a science fiction movie.
- Is** Duncan **having** (have) a barbecue with his friends next week?
- My sister **is spending** (spend) time with her best friend next Sunday.
- Are** you **going** (go) to the party with Archie?

"be going to"

- We use **"be going to"** to talk about intentions, plans, predictions and arrangements in the future.



Affirmative (+)

I You He She It	am going to are going to is going to is going to is going to	have a picnic next Sunday.
We You They	are going to are going to are going to	have a picnic next Sunday.



Negative (-)

I You He She It	am not going to are not / aren't going to is not / isn't going to is not / isn't going to is not / isn't going to	have a picnic next Sunday.
We You They	are not / aren't going to are not / aren't going to are not / aren't going to	have a picnic next Sunday.



Question (?)

Am Are Is Is Is	I you he she it	going to have a picnic next Sunday?
Are Are Are	we you they	going to have a picnic next Sunday?



Short Answers

Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
Yes, you are. / No, you are not.
Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.
Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.

Yes, we are. / No, we aren't.
Yes, you are. / No, you aren't.
Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

Time expressions: tomorrow, tomorrow afternoon/morning, this evening, on Sunday, next week, next month, next year, next Thursday ...



ATTENTION!

We use question words with **"be going to"** for inquiries.

Examples: Who is going to organise the event?

Why are Gary and Gina going to travel to Italy?



EXERCISES

1

Use the verbs in the brackets to complete the sentences with the correct forms of "be going to".

1. **Are** _____ you _____ (attend) the party?
am not going to go
2. I _____ (not go) skating with my friends tomorrow afternoon.
3. **Are** _____ Rose _____ (refuse) Alex's invitation?
going to refuse
4. **Are** _____ they _____ (share) their opinions with us in the meeting?
going to share
are going to organise
5. Mahir and his sister _____ (organise) a surprise party for Kate.
am going to see
6. I _____ (see) a play with my classmates next Saturday.
7. Nancy and Sid are so excited because they _____ (visit) their best cousin on Friday.
are going to visit
8. Our guitar course _____ (start) two days later.
is going to start

2

Use the correct forms of 'be going to' to make sentences.

1. I / go / the theatre / with my classmates / tomorrow.
I am going to go to the theatre with my classmates tomorrow.
2. Steve / watch / a thriller movie / tonight.
Steve is going to watch a thriller movie tonight.
3. Helen / visit / the new art exhibition / next Sunday.
Helen is going to visit the new art exhibition next Sunday.
4. Who / organise / the birthday party / for Marta?
Who is going to organise the birthday party for Marta?
5. Nil / and / Grace / not meet / after the picnic.
Nil and Grace are going to meet after the picnic.
6. They / make / some sandwiches / for lunch.
They are going to make sandwiches for lunch.
7. Aynur / and / Rose Mary / visit / a book fair / in the town centre.
Aynur and Rose Mary are going to visit a book fair in the town centre.

SNAP DECISIONS / FUTURE PREDICTIONS

" will "

- We use 'will' to talk about the decisions we make at the moment of speaking and future predictions.

Examples: 1. A: Would you like to join my birthday?

B: Yes, sure. I'll be very happy. (snap decision)

2. I think it'll rain tomorrow. (future prediction)



Affirmative (+)

I You He She It	will	watch a film.
We You They	will	watch a film.



Negative (-)

I You He She It	will not / won't	watch a film.
We You They	will not / won't	watch a film.



Question (?)

Will	I you he she it	watch a film?
Will	we you they	watch a film?



Short Answers

Yes, I will. / No, I will not / won't.
 Yes, you will. / No, you will not / won't.
 Yes, he will. / No, he will not / won't.
 Yes, she will. / No, she will not / won't.
 Yes, it will. / No, it will not / won't.

Yes, we will. / No, we will not / won't.
 Yes, you will. / No, you will not / won't.
 Yes, they will. / No, they will not / won't.

Time expressions: today, tomorrow, on Sunday, next Sunday, next week, next month, in two days/weeks/ months/years, the day after tomorrow, ten years from now ...



ATTENTION !

We also use **“think, hope, guess”** with **“will”**.

Examples: Helen thinks Ray won't be late.

I hope she will attend the party.



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of **“will”**.

1. Piraye will visit (visit) her grandmother in three days.
2. Will you go (go) to the party?
3. I won't do (not/do) my homework on Saturday.
4. When will Bob arrive (arrive)?
5. My parents will have (have) a barbecue in the garden.
6. Andrew won't attend (not/attend) the meeting.
7. Gordon will join (join) the tournament next year.
8. Will Derya organise (organise) a picnic tomorrow afternoon?

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. I think I will / **am going to** play basketball after studying.
2. I have a great plan. We **will** / are going to go to a rock concert this weekend.
3. Why don't we study at home? I think home **is going to** / will be better than here.
4. My friends and I **will** / are going to spend our time at a great hotel. We're very excited.
5. I have two tickets. I **will** / am going to go to see a play. Would you like to join me?
6. I hope it will / **is going to** be sunny on Saturday.
7. **A:** I want to invite Sarah to the party.
B: That's not a good idea. She won't / **isn't going to** accept your invitation. I'm sure about that.
8. I can't go to the cinema with you because I **will** / am going to finish my science project.

Would you like ...? / Do you want ...? / How/What about ...? / Shall ...? / Let's ... / Why don't ...?

- We use these structures to talk about suggestions, offers and invitations.



WOULD LIKE

▶ **Would + I / you / he / she / it / we / they + like + noun?**

Example: Would you like some coffee?

- ✓ Yes, I would.
- ✗ No, I wouldn't.

▶ **Would + I / you / he / she / it / we / they + like to + verb?**

Example: Would he like to drink some coffee?

- ✓ Yes, he would.
- ✗ No, he wouldn't.

LEARN STEP BY STEP



DO YOU WANT?

▶ **Do/Does + I / you / he / she / it / we / they + want + noun?**

Example: Do you want a mug of tea?

- ✓ Yes, I do.
- ✗ No, I don't.

▶ **Do/Does + I / you / he / she / it / we / they + want to + noun?**

Example: Do you want to drink a mug of tea?

- ✓ Yes, I do.
- ✗ No, I don't.



WHAT/HOW ABOUT?

▶ **How/What about + noun?**

Example: How/What about a film?

- ✓ It sounds fun.
- ✗ No, that's not a good idea.

▶ **How/What about + Verb + ing?**

Example: How/What about watching a film?

- ✓ Great idea.
- ✗ No, thanks.

▶ **Why don't/doesn't + I / you / he / she / it / we / they + verb?**

Example: Why don't we have a picnic?

- ✓ Yes, that would be awesome.
- ✗ No, I'm busy.

▶ **Shall I / we go to the theatre and see a play?**

Example: Shall we go skating?

- ✓ Yes, that's a good idea.
- ✗ I'm sorry, but I'm busy



ATTENTION!

“Shall” is only used with “I” and “we”.

Examples : Shall I make a sandwich for them?

Shall we go skating in the afternoon?

► **Let's** + **verb.**

Example :

Let's have a barbecue this weekend!

✓ Great idea!

✗ Thanks buddy, but I'm not free at the weekend.



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets in the correct forms.

- Next weekend, we should do something different. How about going (go) to the theatre?
- In my hometown, some people go skating. It looks enjoyable. Shall we try (try) it?
- After you finish your homework, would you like to drink (drink) some tea?
- Serhat is going cycling with his friends. What about joining (join) them?
- Why don't we play (play) football?
- Let's visit (visit) our dear grandparents. I miss them very much.
- Would you like to invite (invite) Steve to the ceremony? He is a good boy.
- Does he want to eat (eat) out with you?

2

Complete the sentences with the words below.

to

does

do

how

would

want

shall

like

- Does she want to come with us? Shall we ask her?
- He would like to attend the meeting, but he has to pick up his father from the airport.
- Would you like to apologise to him? I think he'll forgive you.
- Do you want to help your brother with his science project?
- There is an awesome art exhibition at the shopping mall. How about visiting it?
- Shall we have a big picnic with our all friends this Sunday?
- Do you want to make a sculpture with your aunt?
- I'd like to play basketball with them, but I'm busy.

GRAMMAR 2

MAKING SIMPLE INQUIRIES

- We can use the following questions to make inquiries.
- **A:** Are you free?
B: Yes, I'm. Why? / No, I'm not. I'm busy.
- **A:** Are you busy?
B: Yes, I'm / No, I'm not. Why?
- **A:** Are you doing anything tomorrow?
B: Yes, I have a plan. / No, I'm not. Why?

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Put the questions below into the correct order.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. free / are / today / you? | <u>Are you free today</u> _____ ? |
| 2. busy / at / you / weekend / are / the? | <u>Are you busy at the weekend</u> _____ ? |
| 3. is / buddy / what / doing / your / Sunday / on? | <u>What is your buddy doing on Sunday</u> _____ ? |
| 4. weekend / doing / you / are / anything / next? | <u>Are you doing anything next weekend</u> _____ ? |
| 5. your / are / coming / friends / us / with? | <u>Are your friends coming with us</u> _____ ? |
| 6. me / you / are / with / coming? | <u>Are you coming with me</u> _____ ? |
| 7. party / attending / you / are / the? | <u>Are you attending the party?</u> _____ ? |

2

Complete the dialogues with the words below.

are

free

anything

- A:** Are _____ you doing anything tomorrow? I have a plan for us.
B: No, I'm free. What is it?
- A:** We're planning to go to the library tomorrow. Are you busy?
B: No, I'm not doing anything. I'm free _____. I can join you.
- A:** My brother is going to go skating alone. Would you like to join him?
B: That sounds awesome. I'm not doing anything _____. I'm free.

GRAMMAR TEST

1-10: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. **Dilan** : _____ some cake?
Harry : Thanks, I'm full.
A) Would you like to
B) How much
C) Shall
D) Do you want
2. **Sam** : Are you doing anything tomorrow?
Diego : No, I'm doing nothing. Why?
Sam : How about _____ cycling?
Diego : Sounds awesome.
A) to go
B) going
C) go
D) goes
3. **Stella** : _____ going to an exhibition tomorrow?
Adrian: Yeah, that's a good idea.
A) Do you want
B) Would you like to
C) What about
D) Will you
4. **Tina** : I haven't got a plan for next weekend. What shall we do?
Samuel : _____ go to an art exhibition?
Tina : I'm sorry, but I'm not interested in art.
A) What about
B) Do you like
C) How about
D) Shall we
5. **Mirza** : _____ go to the shopping mall?
Ayşenur : I'm so busy, but I can't refuse it. I love shopping.
A) Would you like
B) Shall
C) Why don't we
D) Are we

6. **Suat** : I have a great plan. We _____ to a jazz concert.

Enver : Wow! Great idea.

- A) would like going
C) want go
B) are going to
D) will to go

7.



I bought our train tickets yesterday. We _____ to İzmir next month.

- A) am going
C) are go to
B) are go
D) are going

GRAMMAR TEST

8. **Faulkner** : Are you busy on Friday? _____ have a barbecue.

Paul : That would be awesome.

- A) We are going
C) Do
B) Will
D) Let's

9. **Ali** : What about _____ to the concert?

Elif : Yeah, I'd love to join you, but I don't know where the concert hall is.

- A) go
C) to go
B) going
D) to going

10. **Grace** : _____ we go skating tomorrow afternoon?

Danny : That sounds fun.

- A) Would you like
B) Let's
C) Why don't
D) How about

11. 1. Would you like to going skating?
2. How about meeting at a café?
3. Shall we attend the party?
4. Are you do anything tomorrow?

Which sentences are grammatically CORRECT?

- A) 2-3 B) 1-2
C) 2-4 D) 3-4

12.



I have two exams, but I'm going to _____ a movie tonight. I'm so tired.

David

- A) to watching B) watch
C) watched D) watching

13. **Marta** : I'd like to go to the cinema tomorrow afternoon because there is a great science fiction movie. _____?

Benjamin : No, I'm sorry. I'm going to have a picnic with my family.

- A) Have you got a plan
B) Are you busy
 C) Are you free
D) Are you stuffed

14. **Sarah** : Are you free tonight? Why don't we _____ to a café and chit-chat.

Jessie : Thanks for invitation, but I must revise for my science exam.

- A) go B) going
C) to go D) to going

15. **Mete** : There is a bowling tournament. Let's join it!

Harun : I'd love to, but I have a plan. _____ study maths.

- A) Yeah, great idea B) I am going to
C) I would love to D) Let's

16. Which of the following is an invitation?

- A) I have a great plan.
B) Who is your favourite singer?
C) Are you doing anything tomorrow?
 D) How about making a sculpture?

17. 1. Would you like a. go
2. How about b. to go
3. Shall we c. going

Which pair is TRUE?

- A) 1 - a / 2 - c / 3 - b
 B) 1 - b / 2 - c / 3 - a
C) 1 - c / 2 - a / 3 - b
D) 1 - b / 2 - a / 3 - c

18. go / would / like / to / to / theatre / the / you ?

Which of the following is the CORRECT order?

- A) Would you go to like to the theatre?
 B) Would you like to go to the theatre?
C) Would you like go to the to theatre?
D) Would like you to go to the theatre?

19. Which of the following sentences is grammatically WRONG?

- A) I would like to join you after ten o'clock.
B) He won't play basketball with us.
 C) I am going meet my friends tomorrow afternoon.
D) Let's eat out tonight.

20. cinema / how / the / to / about / going ?

Which of the following is the CORRECT order?

- A) How going to the about cinema?
B) How to the going cinema about?
C) How about to the going cinema?
 D) How about going to the cinema?

GRAMMAR TEST

GRAMMAR TEST

READING

True Friendship

I have two best friends called Julia and Robert. I like spending time with them. We usually meet at a café and chit-chat. We talk about lots of interesting things. Julia is honest and funny. She tells interesting jokes and makes me laugh all the time. Robert is a bit laid-back, but I love him very much. He's a cool boy. I get on well with both of them. Julia and I usually share similar hobbies and interests. We enjoy going cycling, reading books and visiting art exhibitions together. Robert is interested in rock and jazz music. He is going to a rock concert next Saturday. Robert and I like playing sports. Basketball and football are our favourites. Julia hates football. The three of us like going to the cinema.



Robert and I like science fiction movies, but Julia prefers western movies. I think our friendship is very strong. We accept each other's differences with respect. By the way, Julia, Robert and I are going to attend a birthday party tomorrow. Julia is very excited because she loves parties.



A. Read the text to answer the questions.

1. Where does Michael meet his friends?
They meet at a café.
2. What is Julia like?
She is honest and funny.
3. Who is relaxed in manner and character?
Robert is relaxed in manner and character.
4. When is the rock concert?
It's next Saturday.



B. Read the text again to mark the sentences as T for True and F for False.

1. Julia and Robert aren't Michael's true friends. **T/F**
2. Michael doesn't get on well with Robert because he's laid-back. **T/F**
3. Michael and Julia like riding a bike. **T/F**
4. The three friends like science fiction movies. **T/F**
5. The three friends enjoy having a conversation together. **T/F**

1. **Stacy** : Hey buddy! We're going skating tomorrow morning. How about joining us?
Morgan : That sounds awesome, but I must finish my science project.
Stacy : OK. Let me know when you're free.
Morgan : Sure. See you later.

Which picture shows Stacy's plan?

A)



B)



C)



D)



2.



Melisa

I have a best friend called Judy. We are in the same class. We share lots of hobbies and interests. We enjoy having picnics together when the weather is nice. We see a play every Saturday. We are interested in rock music, so we never miss rock music concerts. I think Judy is a great person in my life. She's honest and funny. She always supports me when I need her. It's a great feeling to have a true friend.

We understand from the text that Melisa and Judy _____.

- A) hate going to the theatre
 B) are interested in different things
 C) don't trust each other
 D) get on well with each other

3.

Character		
Chris	Miley	Stella
laid-back, calm	calm, funny	relaxed, honest
Interests		
paintings, sports, skating	art, movies, theatre	sports, picnics, art

Which of the following is TRUE according to the table?

- A) Chris and Miley make people laugh.
 B) Chris and Stella are interested in seeing plays.
 C) Miley and Stella don't have a similar interest.
 D) Stella doesn't like telling lies.

4.

Interests	Movies & Plays	Meeting friends	Going to art exhibitions
Suna	✓	✓	✗
Sabri	✓	✗	✗
Taner	✗	✓	✗

Which of the following invitations will Taner and Suna both accept according to the table?

- A) How about seeing an animation film?
- B) Why don't we go to the café and chit-chat?
- C) Shall we visit the new art exhibition?
- D) Would you like to go to the theatre?

5. **Emily** : I feel bored.

Kyle : _____?

Emily : I'm sorry, but I don't feel like going to the theatre.

Kyle : _____?

Emily : Let's go to the cinema.

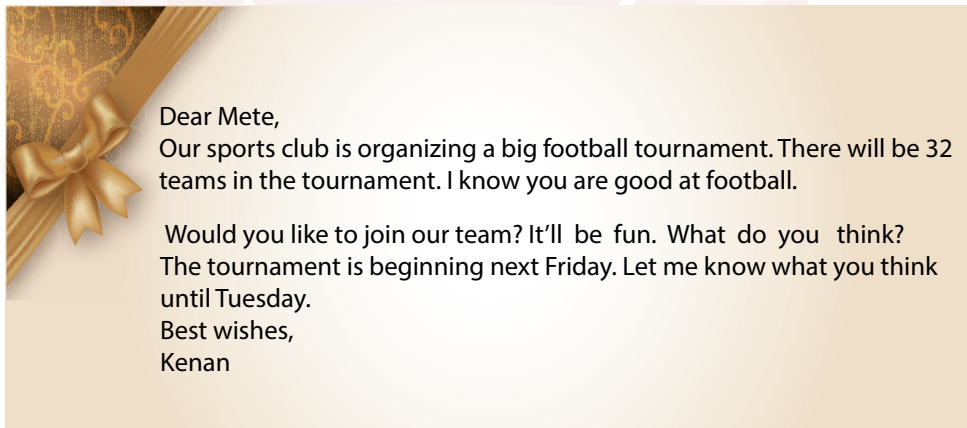
Kyle : Great idea. _____?

Emily : Sure. Let's go then.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT Kyle ask Emily?

- A) Shall we see a thriller
- B) What would you like to do
- C) Why don't we see a play
- D) When is your science exam

6.



Mete can't join the tournament because he's very busy. He wants to refuse Kenan's invitation politely.

Which of the following is a suitable way to refuse the invitation?

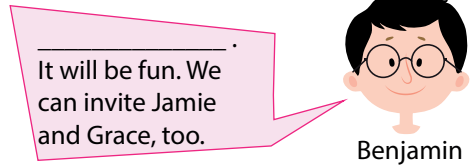
- A) I'm so sorry, but I can't join you. I'm going to visit my grandfather. He's ill.
- B) I'm free, but football tournaments are boring.
- C) That sounds terrible. I'm not into football.
- D) I think your team will lose, so be ready for that.

7.



What about having a barbecue next Saturday?

Nancy



It will be fun. We can invite Jamie and Grace, too.

Benjamin



Sure. I'll text them to join us.

Nancy

Which of the following DOES NOT complete the conversation?

- A) Sure, it sounds awesome
- B) That's a good idea, but I'm really busy**
- C) I can't refuse it
- D) Yeah, that would be great

8. Kate and Jessica are sisters. The two lists below show their interests.

Kate	Jessica
sculptures, paintings	art exhibitions
jazz concerts	plays
skating and cycling	bowling and basketball
western movies	romance movies

The two sisters want to do something together. Which of the following activities will they choose?

A)



B)



C)



D)



9.



Hillary

I think she is a real friend. I always trust her.

I think she is an honest girl. You can count on her.



Laura

What do you think about Şilan?



Amir

I get on well with her. We share similar hobbies and interests.

She is a laid-back person. I don't get on well with her.



Malcom

Who thinks Şilan is relaxed in manner and character?

A) Hillary

B) Laura

C) Amir

D) Malcom

10.



Jennifer

My family and I want to have a nice holiday. Look at the activity lists of four hotels below.

I must compare them and choose one of them according to our interests.

- My father and mother are interested in art, movies and music.
- My sister is crazy about music, painting and drawing.
- My brother is fond of making sculptures, painting and sports.
- I like drawing, chit-chatting and cycling.

Hotel A	Hotel B	Hotel C	Hotel D
Art activities Sports activities Music events	Music events Cycling Chatting events	Cinema Sports activities Music events	Cycling Skating Swimming

Which hotel is the most suitable for Jennifer and her family?

A) Hotel A

B) Hotel B

C) Hotel C

D) Hotel D

TEEN LIFE

*It takes courage to grow up and become who you really are.
E. E. Cummings*



We are going to learn :

- ✍ expressing likes and dislikes
- ✍ expressing preferences
- ✍ stating personal opinions

UNIT 2

UNIT 2 TEEN LIFE

Common Expressions

I can't stand rock music.

What kind of books do you like?

How often do you do sports?

What does she like doing in her free time?

What type of music do you prefer?

What do you do in the evening?

Are you kidding?

It makes me feel relaxed.

I'm keen on going to the theatre.

He is fond of going to concerts.

I hate insulting others.

I rarely go to the theatre.

I think hip-hop concerts are terrific.

I never listen to pop music.

Rak müziğe katlanamam.

Ne tür kitapları seversin?

Ne sıklıkla spor yaparsın?

O boş zamanlarında ne yapmayı sever?

Ne tür müzik dinlersin?

Akşamları ne yaparsın?

Şaka mı yapıyorsun?

Beni rahatlamış hissettiriyor.

Ben tiyatroya gitmeye meraklıyım.

O konserlere gitmeyi çok sever.

Başkalarını aşağılamaktan nefret ederim.

Nadiren tiyatroya giderim.

Bence hip-hop konserleri müthiş.

Asla pop müzik dinlemem.



VOCABULARY 1

EXERCISES

TYPES OF MUSIC

- rock music → rak müzik
- slow dance music → yavaş dans müziği
- jazz music → caz müzik
- rap music → rap müzik
- folk music → halk müziği
- classical music → klasik müzik
- pop music → pop müzik
- Indian music → Hint müziği
- hip-hop music → hip-hop müzik

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

- I prefer classical (l a s c i s c l a) music, I think it is fascinating.
- Most teenagers like hip-hop (i p h o h p) music because it is energetic.
- Jazz (z a j z) music is very popular among American people.
- My father can't stand rock (o c r k) music.
- Older people usually prefer listening to folk (l f o k) music.
- I think Indian (l d i n a n) music is unbearable, so I never listen to it.

2

Find the types of music in the word-search puzzle. Then complete the sentences.

c	v	b	r	q	p	b	n	x	x
v	x	l	w	f	o	l	k	c	e
z	s	f	r	u	o	p	b	j	g
x	w	j	e	i	g	f	j	n	c
h	z	a	x	n	c	o	i	q	l
i	q	z	x	r	c	t	o	x	a
p	s	z	w	a	x	k	w	q	s
h	a	e	w	p	t	y	u	i	s
o	f	b	n	n	l	o	x	x	i
p	o	p	q	w	r	o	c	k	c
b	c	q	q	e	u	p	b	b	a
m	x	i	n	d	i	a	n	x	l

- Folk music is the traditional music of the people in a country.
- Rap music includes rhythmic speech. This type of music is usually common among African Americans in the United States.
- Classical music was developed in the 18th and 19th centuries in Europe. Mozart and Beethoven were two well-known composers of this type of music.
- Indian music is common in some Asian countries.
- Jazz music is a modern form of music. It's still very common in the world.
- Hip-hop music is a form of rap music.
- Rock music has a heavy beat. It's a type of popular modern music. It's quite loud. Electric guitars and keyboards are two most common instruments of this music.

VOCABULARY 2

TYPES OF BOOK

- detective book ~~~~~> dedektif kitabı
 children's book ~~~~~> çocuk kitabı
 fantasy book ~~~~~> fantasti kitabı
 travel book ~~~~~> seyahat kitabı
 biographical book ~~~~~> biyografik kitap
 science-fiction book ~~~~~> bilim kurgu kitabı
 Gothic book ~~~~~> Gotik kitabı
 realistic book ~~~~~> gerçekçi / realist kitap

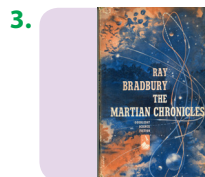
- 2 Look at the pictures. What types of book are they? Write.



detective



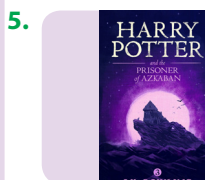
biographical



science fiction



Gothic



fantasy



children's



travel



realistic

EXERCISES

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words below.

- detective fantasy science fiction
 travel biographical

- I love reading travel books because I get excited as I learn about new places.
- Sally is fond of science fiction books. Her favourite book is Space Travellers.
- My classmates and I are keen on reading detective books. Sherlock Holmes is our favourite.
- Many teenagers are keen on fantasy books. Harry Potter is one of the most popular ones.
- Nicole thinks reading about somebody's life is ridiculous, so she hates biographical books.

VOCABULARY 3



ACTIVITIES

stay in a tent ~~~~~>	çadırda kalmak	read a book ~~~~~>	kitap okumak
listen to music ~~~~~>	müzik dinlemek	do /play sports ~~~~~>	spor yapmak
play the guitar ~~~~~>	gitar çalmak	do crunches ~~~~~>	mekik çekmek
play basketball ~~~~~>	basketbol oynamak	do squats ~~~~~>	çömelme hareketleri yapmak
play an instrument ~~~~~>	bir enstrüman çalmak	do push-ups ~~~~~>	şınav çekmek
play chess ~~~~~>	satranç oynamak	take the dog for a walk ~~~~~>	köpeği yürüyüşe çıkarmak
sing a song ~~~~~>	şarkı söylemek	eat out ~~~~~>	dışarda yemek yemek
go to a concert ~~~~~>	konsere gitmek	wash the dishes ~~~~~>	bulaşık yıkamak
go to the theatre ~~~~~>	tiyatroya gitmek	wash the car ~~~~~>	araba yıkamak
go to the cinema ~~~~~>	sinemaya gitmek	meet friends ~~~~~>	arkadaşlarla buluşmak
go skating ~~~~~>	paten yapmaya gitmek	study together ~~~~~>	birlikte ders çalışmak
go camping ~~~~~>	kamp yapmaya gitmek	bake a cake ~~~~~>	kek yapmak
do homework ~~~~~>	ödev yapmak	learn archery ~~~~~>	okçuluk öğrenmek
watch TV ~~~~~>	televizyon izlemek	go swimming ~~~~~>	yüzmeye gitmek
ride a bike ~~~~~>	bisiklet sürmek	read the news online ~~~~~>	internetten haber okumak



EXERCISES

1 Write the names of the activities under the pictures.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> do push-ups | <input type="radio"/> stay in a tent |
| <input type="radio"/> wash the dishes | <input type="radio"/> meet friends |
| <input type="radio"/> go skating | <input type="radio"/> do homework |



stay in a tent



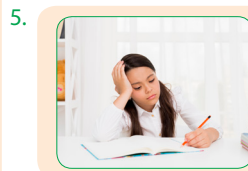
meet friends



go skating



wash the dishes



do homework



do push-ups

2

Complete the sentences with the activities below.

go to the cinema

do squats

go camping

go to the theatre

sing a song

eat out

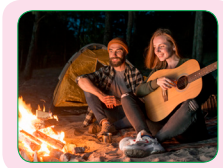
go to the cinema

- I _____ with my classmates at the weekend. We are fond of movies.
- My favorite activity is exercising in the morning. I always do squats 20 times after I have breakfast.
- Every summer, Hakan and his friends go camping in Antalya. They take their basic equipment and share the duties. Pitching a tent is Hakan's favorite.
- My best friend Julia and her family never miss plays. They go to the theatre every weekend.
- I feel bad when you sing a song because you have a terrible voice.
- Rebecca and her husband never cook on Sundays. They eat out every Sunday. It's their routine.

3

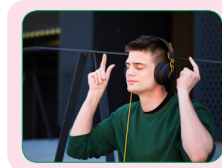
Circle the correct options according to the pictures.

1.



study together / go camping

2.



listen to music /
play an instrument

3.



do crunches / do squats

4.



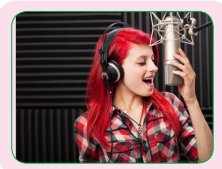
ride a bike / read a book

5.



go to a concert /
go to the theatre

6.



sing a song / do squats

4

Match the halves of the phrases.



1. take
2. read
3. go
4. eat
5. play
6. bake
7. wash

- 3 a. swimming
- 4 b. out
- 7 c. the car
- 6 d. a cake
- 1 e. the dog for a walk
- 5 f. chess
- 2 g. the news online



LEARN STEP BY STEP

5

Put the letters into the correct order to find the phrases. Then complete the sentences.

1. Every Monday, I play basketball (lypa asklbetabl) with my classmates after school.
2. My father hates reading a newspaper. He always reads the news online (asder het ensw loinen). He thinks it is easier.
3. Mia doesn't go swimming (og mwsimgni) at the weekend.
4. I wash my car (ashw ym acr) once a week. To be honest, I hate doing it.
5. Daisy loves listening to music (istelngin ot suicm) a lot. Jazz is her favorite.
6. Teenagers generally play football, play basketball, go swimming or ride a bike. I don't like ordinary sports, so I learn archery (arnle cryaher) at the weekend.

6

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. My mom is an amazing cook. She is keen on baking a cake / eating out.
2. I meet my friends every weekend. I love spending time with them / doing crunches.
3. I go camping with my classmates in summers. We prefer staying in a tent / playing an instrument.
4. In our home, we share the duties. My mother cooks the dinner and I wash the dishes / eat out with my father.
5. Nick is an energetic boy. He hates sitting at home and watching TV / doing sports.

VOCABULARY 4

CAMPING RELATED WORDS

go camping	→	kamp yapmaya gitmek
campsite	→	kamp alanı
campfire	→	kamp ateşi
tent	→	çadır
pitch a tent	→	çadır kurmak
trekking	→	doğa yürüyüşü
backpack	→	sırt çantası
marshmallow	→	lokuma benzer şekerleme

compass	→	pusula
map	→	harita
sleeping bag	→	uyku tulumu
rope	→	ip, halat
match	→	kibrit
pocketknife	→	çakı, cep bıçağı
torch	→	el feneri, fener

EXERCISES

1

Write the words/phrases under the pictures.

- campsite compass torch
 pocketknife sleeping bag tent

2

Complete the sentences with the words below.

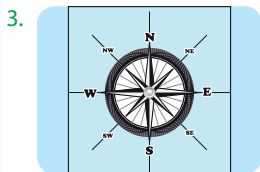
- campfire compass trekking
 tent matches marshmallows
 torch rope



tent



pocketknife



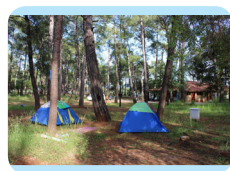
compass



sleeping bag



torch



campsite

- Yuka is keen on going camping and staying in a tent.
- I like being close to nature, so I go trekking at the weekend.
- I can't eat these marshmallows because they are too sweet for me.
- Dora needs to buy two boxes of matches for her camping trip.
- I need a strong rope to climb that wall.
- Look! The compass points to the South. Let's walk that way.
- It's too dark. You should take your torch out of your backpack now.
- It was fascinating to sit around the big campfire and sing songs with my friends in the forest.

VOCABULARY 5

ADJECTIVES

fascinating	büyüleyici	unusual	sıradışı
energetic	enerjik	laughable	gülünç
impressive	etkileyici	absurd	mantıksız, saçma
harmonic	ahenkli/uyumlu	amazing	şaşırtıcı, harika
terrific	müthiş	casual	gündelik, sıradan
unbearable	katlanılmaz	busy	meşgul
trendy	modaya uygun	relaxing	rahatlatıcı
ridiculous	saçma	successful	başarılı
serious	ciddi	self-disciplined	disiplinli
ordinary	sıradan	fashionable	şık, modaya uygun
daily	günlük	relaxed	rahatlamış, rahat
		snob	burnu havada, kendini beğenmiş

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the adjectives.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> harmonic | <input type="radio"/> unbearable |
| <input type="radio"/> fascinating | <input type="radio"/> serious |
| <input type="radio"/> successful | <input type="radio"/> daily |
| <input type="radio"/> self-disciplined | |

1. My boss doesn't like jokes. He is a very serious person.
2. Kevin Durant is one of the most successful basketball players in NBA. He has many rewards and medals.
3. I can't stand jazz music because it's really unbearable.
4. My favorite daily activity is reading a book. I always read 20 pages a day.
5. Aziz Sançar thinks he owes his success to his self-disciplined character and lifestyle.
6. I'm fond of reading fantasy books. I think they are fascinating.
7. I love listening to classical music. It's harmonic.

2

Match the words with their definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 1. terrific | 7 a. not joking or intended to be funny |
| 2. impressive | 1 b. very good |
| 3. ridiculous | 6 c. not different or special |
| 4. snob | 5 d. something that you can't stand |
| 5. unbearable | 8 e. modern and influenced by the most recent fashion |
| 6. ordinary | 3 f. stupid or not logical |
| 7. serious | 4 g. someone who has no respect for people in lower social classes |
| 8. trendy | 2 h. something that has a power to affect the mind or feeling |

3

Circle the correct options in the dialogue.

- Billy** : Hello buddy! What's up?
- Frank** : Fine. What about you?
- Billy** : To be honest, I don't feel well. We have lots of things to do in our office today. Mondays are very **relaxing** / **busy**. I feel extremely tired.
- Frank** : Really? Monday is my favorite day. I feel very **ordinary** / **energetic**. Why don't you do some sports and get relaxed?
- Billy** : I am **serious** / **absurd**, buddy, I can't do anything. I just want to go home and rest. I also have a **snob** / **terrific** boss. He doesn't like his workers and he always insults us.
- Frank** : That's bad, but not **unusual** / **casual**. I think most bosses are the same.
- Billy** : Let's stop talking about my problems at work. Look! Your favorite song is on the radio. This song is very **fashionable** / **harmonic**.
- Frank** : You are a/an **amazing** / **laughable** person. You always make me smile.

VOCABULARY 6

NOUNS

classmate	→	sınıf arkadaşı	medal	→	madalya
buddy	→	kanka, arkadaş	youth	→	gençlik
duty	→	görev	respect	→	saygı
success	→	başarı	bookstore	→	kitabevi
fashion	→	moda	place	→	mekan
member	→	üye	date	→	tarih / zaman
band	→	grup, topluluk	dessert	→	tatlı
family	→	aile	lifestyle	→	yaşam tarzı
relationship	→	ilişki	teenager	→	13-19 arası genç
reward	→	ödül	guitarist	→	gitarist
archer	→	okçu			

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

teenage camp	→	gençlik kampı	fruit juice	→	meyve suyu
basic equipment	→	temel ekipman	keyboard player	→	orgcu, klavyeci
busy day	→	yoğun gün	fizzy drink	→	gazlı içecek
healthy food	→	sağlıklı besin	archery training	→	okçuluk eğitimi
music band	→	müzik grubu	daily activity	→	günlük aktivite
social class	→	sosyal sınıf	fast food	→	hazır/sağlıksız yiyecek
book fair	→	kitap fuarı			



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the words / phrases below.

- basic equipment teenage camp teenagers place
 social classes keyboard player busy day healthy food

- Sportsmen never have fizzy drinks, and they always eat healthy food.
- In our band we enjoy singing rock music. Our songs are generally for teenagers, but some adults also like them.
- Jack likes being close to nature. He's going to attend a teenage camp next month. He thinks it's very exciting to stay in a tent.
- It's not fair to have social classes in the world. All people should have equal rights.
- I always check my basic equipment before I go camping. I take a compass, a sleeping bag, a tent, a pocketknife and a map.
- This city is an amazing place. I want to explore more about it.
- There are five members in our music band. I am the keyboard player.
- I'm going to have a busy day tomorrow because I have three exams.

2

Match the halves of the noun / adjective phrases.



- | | |
|------------|----------------------|
| 1. archery | <u>3</u> a. food |
| 2. music | <u>5</u> b. fair |
| 3. healthy | <u>6</u> c. activity |
| 4. busy | <u>1</u> d. training |
| 5. book | <u>2</u> e. band |
| 6. daily | <u>4</u> f. day |



3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. We share the **duties** / **medals** in our home. I wash the dishes and my wife prepares the meals.
2. Edward and Ron have a great **lifestyle** / **relationship**. They get on well with each other.
3. Sophie always wears trendy clothes. She likes following **fashion** / **date**.
4. I never eat **fizzy drinks** / **dessert** because I want to keep my weight under control.
5. My buddy Aylin gets on well with all of our classmates because she shows **respect** / **fruit juice** to everyone in our class.
6. My favourite **daily** / **youth** activity is doing push-ups.
7. Nick is nineteen years old. He is a **reward** / **teenager**.
8. My brother is a **member** / **band** of an archery club.

4

Find and circle the 16 words in the word-search puzzle.

A	W	S	P	O	R	T	S	M	A	N	X	S	Q	Q
R	X	Z	H	N	N	P	L	Z	S	W	W	U	U	D
C	E	M	E	M	B	E	R	Q	E	R	J	C	H	E
H	J	U	I	O	V	B	N	M	K	L	L	C	L	S
E	W	L	I	F	E	S	T	Y	L	E	Q	E	Q	S
R	Q	D	U	T	Y	B	O	D	A	T	E	S	S	E
X	Q	E	R	Z	B	U	D	D	Y	J	I	S	X	R
C	L	A	S	S	M	A	T	E	N	H	F	R	T	T
Z	A	S	V	B	N	M	R	T	F	G	E	W	W	Q
R	E	S	P	E	C	T	Z	C	Y	O	U	T	H	A
U	Y	F	R	T	Y	U	I	C	V	B	N	G	E	W
M	E	D	A	L	A	F	A	S	H	I	O	N	J	K
W	X	D	T	E	E	N	A	G	E	R	A	T	Y	N
R	E	L	A	T	I	O	N	S	H	I	F	E	S	A

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

For these questions: 1-10, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. I hate pop music. I think it's _____ .
A) energetic B) unbearable
C) relaxing D) harmonic

2. Emily keeps insulting other people. She thinks she is the best in the world. She is a _____ .
A) member B) reward
C) snob D) success

3. Staying in a _____ is the best part of camping.
A) campfire B) backpack
C) tent D) torch

4. Most sportsmen have a / an _____ lifestyle. They own their success to it.
A) self-disciplined B) ordinary
C) absurd D) laughable

5. **Umut** : What types of book do you like?
Yasemin : I prefer reading _____ books. I enjoy visiting different countries and places.
A) fantasy B) biographical
C) science fiction D) travel

6. There are five _____ in our music group. Beryl and Fred are the guitarists, Aleyna is the drummer, Burcu is the keyboard player and I am the singer.
A) archers B) social classes
C) members D) teenagers

7. **Jeremy** : I'm going camping with some friends.
Sharon : Wow! That sounds exciting. What is in your _____ ?

Jeremy : Well, a pocketknife, a torch and some other basic camping equipment.

- A) tent B) compass
C) sleeping bag D) backpack

8. Linda gets up at 8 o'clock. She has breakfast and drives to work. She finishes at 5 p.m. After work, she returns home and prepares dinner. After she reads a book and listens to classical music to feel relaxed. These are her _____ .

- A) busy days B) daily activities
C) social classes D) rewards

9. Our school is organising a summer camp, and I want to _____ it with my buddies.

- A) gain B) bake
C) share D) attend

10. Leo never has _____ drinks because he thinks they are unhealthy.

- A) trendy B) harmonic
C) fizzy D) respect

11. Ali goes to the gym every day. Doing push-ups is his favourite exercise.

Which picture shows Ali?

A) 

B) 

C) 

D) 

12.



I am interested in fantasy books.
I think they are fascinating.

Elise

Which of the following pictures shows a book that Elise prefers reading?



13. Susan is fifteen years old. She is a teenager.

I

She has an active lifestyle. She is fond of classical

II

music. She thinks it's ridiculous. She enjoys

III

reading fantasy books and visiting book fairs in

IV

her free time.

Which underlined word is ODD?

- A) I B) II **C) III** D) IV

14. Lisa is an (I) _____ person. In her free time, she prefers doing sports, going (II) _____ and going to concerts but she doesn't like watching TV, doing (III) _____ or washing the dishes.

Choose the correct option to fill in the gaps in the text.

- A) I. archery - II. youth - III. squats
B) I. energetic - II. skating - III. homework
 C) I. activity - II. respect - III. medals
 D) I. ordinary - II. crunches - III. harmonic

15. Types of Music

- I. fashion III. folk
 II. hip-hop IV. rock

Which IS NOT a type of music on the list?

- A) I** B) II C) III D) IV

16. _____ ? _____

- tent
- compass
- pocketknife
- map
- sleeping bag

Choose the best title for the list.

- A) Marshmallows
 B) Archery Training
C) Camping Equipment
 D) Daily Activities

17. I. teenage a. equipment
 II. social b. food
 III. basic c. camp
 IV. healthy d. class

Match the phrases above.

- A) 1-c, 2-d, 3-b, 4-a B) 1-d, 2-c, 3-a, 4-b
C) 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b D) 1-a, 2-d, 3-c, 4-b

18. I. jazz → type of music
 II. compass → camping equipment
 III. detective → archery
 IV. keyboard player → music band

Which pair is WRONG?

- A) I B) II **C) III** D) IV

19. Types of Book

- I. folk III. detective
 II. realistic IV. travel

Which IS NOT a type of book on the list?

- A) I** B) II C) III D) IV

20. Stella has a great compass with her parents. She always gets on well with them.

The underlined word is WRONG. Which of the following words can we replace with it?

- A) squat B) social class
C) relationship D) pocketknife

NAR TEST

GRAMMAR 1

Expressing Likes and Dislikes

- We use the simple present tense to talk about likes and dislikes.
- We usually use **'like, dislike, love, hate, enjoy'** to express our likes and dislikes.



Affirmative Form

I We You They	like	comedy movies. travel books. classical music.
He She It	likes	Gothic books. Indian music. book fairs.



Negative Form

I We You They	don't like dislike	rock concerts. healthy food. realistic books.
He She It	doesn't like dislikes	biographical books. fizzy drinks. chess.



Question Form

Do	I we you they	like	teenage camps? archery? art exhibitions?
Does	he she it	like	snob people? pop music? biographical books?



Short Answers

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
Yes, you do. / No, you don't.
Yes, we do. / No, we don't.
Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets. Use the correct forms of **the simple present**.

- My sisters hate (hate) biographical books.
- Steve doesn't like (not like) basketball or football.
- Do your parents enjoy (enjoy) the theatre?
- Clara's brothers dislike (dislike) archery.
- I don't like (not like) daily routines.
- Matilda loves (love) hip-hop music, but she doesn't like (not like) jazz.

- We use the **'-ing'** form after **'like, dislike, love, hate, enjoy'**.

✓ **Examples**

I like biographical books. → I like reading biographical books.

She likes classical music. → She likes listening to classical music.

Suat dislikes the theatre. → Suat dislikes going to the theatre.

My buddy and I dislike snob people. → My buddy and I dislike spending time with snob people.

My classmates don't like exhibitions. → My classmates don't like going to exhibitions.

Jason doesn't like romance movies. → Jason doesn't like watching romance movies.

Do you like Gothic books? → Do you like reading Gothic books?

Does Amanda like pop music? → Does Amanda like listening to pop music?

2

Use the words / expressions below to make sentences in **the present simple tense**.

- I / like / go / to / the theatre / with my sister / on Saturdays.
I like going to the theatre with my sister on Saturdays.
- Hannah / not enjoy / play / basketball / in her free time.
Hannah doesn't enjoy playing basketball in her free time.
- Linda's cousins / hate / listen to / rap music?
Linda's cousins hate listening to rap music.
- Who / like / go / to art exhibitions?
Who likes going to art exhibitions?

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- Sema is a snob. She **dislikes** / **likes** insulting people.
- The keyboard player in our band **doesn't like** / **loves** singing. He thinks he has a terrible voice.
- Fatih and his buddy **like** / **likes** spending time together. They go camping every summer.
- Everyone in my family **like** / **likes** listening to rock music.

GRAMMAR 2

Expressing Preferences

- We use **'prefer'** to express our preferences.
- We use the **'-ing'** form of the verb after **'prefer'**.

Examples:

1. I prefer science fiction books. → I prefer reading science fiction books.
2. Norman doesn't prefer jazz concerts. → Norman doesn't prefer going to jazz concerts.

- We use **'to'** when we compare two things or actions.

Examples:

1. They prefer the cinema to television. → They prefer going to the cinema to watching television.
2. Benjamin prefers tea to coffee. → Benjamin prefers drinking tea to (drinking) coffee.



Affirmative Form

I We You They	prefer	reading the news online.
He She It	prefers	going to the theatre. science-fiction books.



Negative Form

I We You They	don't prefer	doing sports. fizzy drinks.
He She It	doesn't prefer	eating out. fast food.



Question Form

Do	I we you they	prefer	hip-hop concerts? going trekking?
Does	he she it	prefer	camping? driving to work? fruit juice?



Short Answers

Yes,	I we you they	do.	No,	I we you they	don't.
Yes,	he she it	does.	No,	he she it	doesn't.



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of "prefer".

- Ellie** : What does Mandy prefer doing on Sundays?
Federico : She prefers watching TV.
- Grace always prefers pitching the tent when we share the duties at a campsite.
- I prefer reading detective books to travel books. I think travel books are more impressive.
- What do your sisters prefer doing in their free time?
- My father prefers reading the news online because he doesn't like using the Internet.
- Marcus prefers listening to jazz music in his room every day.

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- At the weekend, Nicholas and I prefer **prefers** going skating together.
- We usually prefer / **prefers** fizzy drinks at lunch.
- Sportsmen don't / **doesn't** prefer sleeping late because they need to get up early for training.
- Nazlı** : Do Halide and Nalan prefer / **prefers** Datça for camping?
Gül : No, they don't. They usually prefer / **prefers** going to Saklıköy.
- My buddies don't prefer / **doesn't prefer** attending teenage camps. They think they are boring.
- My classmates are fond of sports. On Sundays they prefer / **prefers** going swimming.

3

Circle the mistakes in the sentences. Then correct them.

- Terry don't prefer seeing plays to playing basketball.
doesn't
- Zoe and her best friend prefer going camping with playing basketball.
to
- My son prefer playing chess in his free time.
prefers
- When do Stella prefer going to the theatre?
does
- We prefer do push-ups at the gym.
doing
- Rose doesn't prefers talking to snob people.
prefer
- Do your parents prefer to visiting art exhibitions?
visiting

GRAMMAR 3

Simple Present Tense

We use the simple present to talk about daily routines, habits, general truths, hobbies, likes and dislikes.



Affirmative Form

I We You They	play basketball swim	on Sundays.
He She It	reads fantasy books plays the guitar	in the evening.



Negative Form

I We You They	don't	get up early cook	at the weekend.
He She It	doesn't	get up early shop	every day.



Question Form

Do	I we you they	watch TV read a book	in the morning?
Does	he she it	stay in a tent go camping	every summer?



Short Answers

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
Yes, you do. / No, you don't.
Yes, we do. / No, we don't.
Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.

Time expressions: every day / week / month / year / summer, sometimes, in the morning, in the afternoon, at the weekend, on weekdays ...

We use adverbs of frequency to express how often something happens.

- ★★★★★ always
- ★★★★★ usually / generally
- ★★★ often
- ★★ sometimes
- ★ rarely / seldom
- ✗ never



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the verbs in the parenthesis by using the correct forms of **the simple present tense**.

1. Sheila never goes (go) camping in summers.
2. **George** : What do you do (do) at the weekend?
Marie : I usually meet (meet) my friends, but I also ride (ride) a bike.
3. Martin doesn't have (not have) breakfast on Sundays because he gets up very late.
4. **Berna** : Does Elif read (read) Gothic books? I want to lend her 'The Scream'.
Aziz : No, she doesn't . She prefers reading detective books.
5. Samuel and Frederic usually do (do) their homework after school.
6. My mother bakes (bake) great cakes, and she prepares (prepare) fascinating meals. She is an unusual cook.
7. Julia has (have) a good relationship with her teachers. She always listens (listen) to them carefully and does (do) her homework regularly.
8. Matilda doesn't play (not play) board games at the weekend.

2

Complete the text with the adverbs of frequency / time expressions below.

- at the weekend sometimes never always
 every day usually every in the afternoon

My name is Gary. I'm a high school student. I'm interested in different sports and activities. I (1) always go swimming. I mean swimming is a big part of my life. I swim seven days a week. I listen to classical music in my room (2) every day . I go to concerts with my friends (3) at the weekend . Saturday is usually the best day for concerts and entertainment. I'm fond of board games, and chess is my favorite. I play chess (4) every Monday and Tuesday after school. I also enjoy going to the cinema with my friends (5) in the afternoon on Fridays, but I (6) never go to the theatre. I hate seeing plays. I like summer breaks. I (7) usually go camping with my friends. It's a terrific feeling to be close to nature. I (8) sometimes attend summer courses, but not often.

GRAMMAR 4

Stating Personal Opinions (Making Simple Inquiries)

- We use **'think'** to state our opinions.



Affirmative Form

I We You They	think	camping is a fascinating activity.
He She It	thinks	book fairs are boring.



Negative Form

I We You They	don't	think	snob people are unbearable.
He She It	doesn't	think	Seher is an honest girl.



Question Form

Do	I we you they	think	Kelly is your true friend?
Does	he she it	think	fruit juice isn't healthy?

* We can also use **'In my opinion'** and **'To be honest'** to express our opinions and thoughts.

✓ Examples

- I'm fond of playing chess. In my opinion, it is a relaxing activity.
- To be honest, eating out is ridiculous. We can cook better meals at home.

* We use **'be keen on'** or **'be fond of'** to talk about our likes, interests and hobbies.

Examples

- I am keen on going to the theatre. I don't miss any plays.
- I am fond of fizzy drinks. I know they aren't healthy, but they are delicious.
- She is keen on going camping. She usually goes camping with her buddies in summers.
- Ahmet is fond of reading Gothic books. He thinks they are amazing.



EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. Buse **thinks** / **think** biographical books are ridiculous.
2. We **doesn't think** / **don't think** staying in a tent is an exciting activity.
3. Berna usually spends her time with her family. I **think** / **thinks** they have a good relationship.
4. **Do** / **Does** your brother think basketball is a terrific sport?
5. Selen and I **think** / **thinks** the new student is a friendly boy.
6. Norman doesn't **thinks** / **think** rock music is interesting.

2

Complete the sentences with the words / expressions below.

are keen on

isn't keen on

opinion

do

to be honest

fond of

1. Dora **isn't keen on** wearing trendy clothes.
2. What type of music is your brother **fond of** ?
3. **Do** _____ you think camping is a dangerous activity?
4. Marta and Jack **are keen on** playing musical instruments.
5. In my **opinion** _____, archery is a boring sport.
6. I never listen to hip-hop music. **To be honest** _____, I can't stand it.

3

Match the halves of the sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. Miranda is fond | 5 a. hate going to jazz concerts. |
| 2. My parents | 2 b. think Hannah has a fascinating voice. |
| 3. They are keen | 6 c. keen on playing football in his free time. |
| 4. In her opinion, | 3 d. on eating marshmallows. |
| 5. To be honest, I | 1 e. of listening to rock music. |
| 6. Olga's father is | 4 f. hip-hop is a boring type of music. |

GRAMMAR TEST

For Questions 1-5, fill in the blanks with the correct options according to the paragraph.

Norman wants to be a successful sportsman and win many medals in the future. He (1) _____ most of his time playing basketball because he needs to gain lots of experience. He knows that he should have a self-disciplined lifestyle. He (2) _____ has fast food or drink fizzy drinks. Every morning, he (3) _____ early and has breakfast. Then he does 20 crunches and 30 squats. He (4) _____ exercising in the morning makes him feel energetic. Also, he is a successful student at school. He (5) _____ listens to his teachers carefully and he has a good relationship with them.

1.

A) is spends

C) spends

B) spend

D) spending

2.

A) never

C) usually

B) always

D) often

3.

A) get up

C) gets up

B) getting up

D) is get up

4.

A) prefers

C) likes

B) thinks

D) dislikes

5.

A) rarely

C) sometimes

B) seldom

D) always

6-15: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

6. **Nelson** : What type of books _____ you _____?

Sam : I prefer realistic books. 'On the Way' is my favorite.

A) do / prefers

B) does / prefer

C) do / prefer

D) does / prefers

7. **Kaan** : What type of music do you prefer listening to?

Metin : I'm keen on _____ to folk music. It's terrific.

A) listens

B) listen

C) listening

D) to listen

8. **Faruk** : Do you like listening to music?

Jale : _____. I am fond of Indian music.

A) Yes, she does

B) Yes, I do

C) No, I don't

D) No, she doesn't

9. I never read biographical books. _____, I find them boring.

A) I think

B) I'm keen on

C) I don't like

D) To be honest

10. My wife _____ preparing a meal after a busy day. She prefers eating out.

A) doesn't enjoys

B) doesn't like

C) prefer

D) dislike

11. Gibson prefers _____ his dog for a walk in the afternoon.

- A) take **B) taking**
C) to taking D) takes

12. I _____ fantasy books to detective books. I think detective books are amazing.

- A) don't prefer** B) am fond of
C) like D) think

13. Fatih's father always _____ the news online.

- A) read **B) reads**
C) reading D) like reading

14. **Murat** : Who _____ you go to concerts with?

Carla : I go to concerts with my classmate Selin. We like spending time together.

Murat : What type of concerts do you prefer?

Carla : We _____ jazz concerts.

- A) do / prefers **B) do / prefer**
C) does / prefer D) does / prefers

15. I _____ listening to music and going to concerts.

- A) keen on B) prefers
C) am fond of D) dislikes

16. you / the cinema / do / how often / go to ?

Which of the following is the correct order of the sentence above?

- A) How do you go to the cinema often?
B) How often do you go to the cinema?
C) How often do go you to the cinema?
D) How do you often go to the cinema?

17.

I
I think biographical books are fascinating.

II
I prefer going skating to playing chess.

III
I like doing homework with my friends.

IV
I go camping with my classmates every summer.

Mehmet

In which sentence does Mehmet state a personal opinion?

- A) I** B) II C) III D) IV

18. I. Then I help my mother to prepare dinner.

II. I do my homework and watch TV for half an hour.

III. I read a book and have a shower before I go to bed.

IV. I finish school at 3 p.m. and go back home.

Put the sentences into the correct order.

- A) I – IV – II – III **B) IV – II – I – III**
C) IV – III – I – II D) III – IV – II – I

19. North _____ reading travel books and listening to rap music in his free time.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) is keen on **B) thinks**
C) prefers D) likes

20. My father is a professional basketball player, so he has an active lifestyle. He **(I) always** gets up at half past seven and **(II) have** a healthy breakfast. Then he **(III) goes** jogging in the park near our house. He goes training in the afternoon. He trains for four hours at the basketball club. He listens to folk music in his free time. He **(IV) think** it's relaxing.

Which two numbered words are grammatically WRONG?

- A) I – II B) II – III
C) III – IV **D) II – IV**

READING

Our Camping Adventure

I'm a high school student. I like summer holidays. I usually go camping with my close friends. In my opinion, it's a relaxing activity. I feel very excited when I get close to nature and stay in a tent. We usually go to Yedigöller in Bolu for camping. When we go to the campsite, we share the duties. Musa and I pitch the tent. Nevin doesn't prefer pitching the tent because she doesn't like it. She makes the campfire with Beyazit. Kemal and Melisa prepare the meals.



We have lots of fun activities at the camp during the day. We usually take our backpacks and go trekking after breakfast. We keep a map, a compass and a pocketknife with some water and food in our backpacks. In the afternoon, we read books or play board games. Chess is always our favorite. Kemal and I like detective books, but Nevin and Musa prefer fantasy books. Beyazit is keen on reading realistic books. Melisa never reads books. She thinks reading books is unbearable. She's a music person. I mean she plays the guitar well and sings songs beautifully. In the evening, we sit around the campfire after dinner. We roast our marshmallows and chit-chat.

Choose the correct options according to the passage.

- 1. It is stated in the passage that _____ .**
 - A) Berat is a great musician
 - B) Nevin usually pitches the tent
 - C) Kemal and Berat are fond of the same type of book
 - D) Berat thinks camping is a tiring activity
- 2. Who can't stand books according to the text?**
 - A) Berat
 - B) Melisa
 - C) Nevin
 - D) Musa
- 3. In the text, there IS NO information about _____ .**
 - A) some basic camping equipment
 - B) how they share the duties
 - C) their book preferences
 - D) the date of their next camping trip

UNIT TEST | New Generation Questions

For these questions: 1 – 2, choose the best option to fill in the blanks.

1. **Bernice** : What type of music do you prefer?

Şeyma : I'm fond of folk music. I think it's terrific.

Beyazit : To be honest, _____. I find it unbearable.

A) folk music is impressive

B) I never miss folk music concerts

C) I never listen to it

D) I agree with you

2.



Rose

My sister reads 3 books once a week. She is keen on fantasy and detective books, but she can't stand reading _____ books. She thinks it's ridiculous to learn about famous people's lives.

A) science fiction

B) Gothic

C) children's

D) biographical

3.



Kuzey

I usually exercise in the morning after breakfast. Doing squats is my favourite.

Which picture shows Kuzey's favourite exercise?

A)



B)



C)



D)



Answer the questions (4 – 5) according to the passage below.

My buddies Şeyma and Lale prefer different types of music. For example, Şeyma likes rock music because she thinks it is energetic. Lale is fond of jazz music. According to her, it's trendy and harmonic. Şeyma thinks jazz music is unbearable, and it is not for teenagers. They always argue about their music preferences, so they never go to concerts together.

4. Şeyma and Lale always argue because _____.

- A) they enjoy the same type of music
- B) they have different tastes in music
- C) Şeyma thinks teenagers should listen to jazz
- D) Lale can't stand jazz music

5. Şeyma _____.

- A) never listens to jazz music
- B) never goes to concerts
- C) thinks rock music is ridiculous
- D) gets on well with Lale

6.



I am fond of detective books because _____.

Pelin

Which of the following DOES NOT complete the sentence?

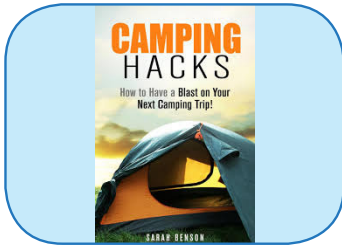
- A) in my opinion, they are unbearable
- B) they are really impressive
- C) I get excited as I read them
- D) they are fascinating

7. Drake and Josh want to read the same book. Here are the lists of their interests.

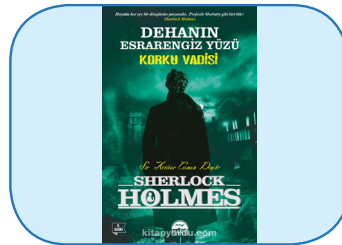
<p>Drake</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ sports ✓ stay in a tent ✓ archery ✓ chess 	<p>Josh</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ camping ✓ detectives ✓ trekking ✓ computers
--	---

Choose the book that both Drake and Josh would prefer to read.

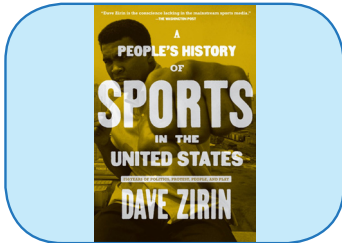
A)



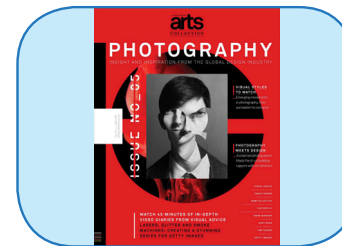
B)



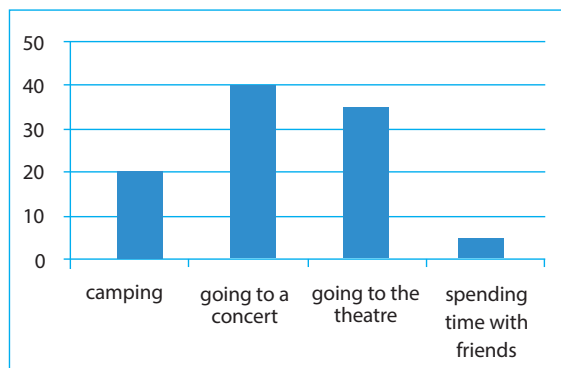
C)



D)



8. The chart below is about some teenagers' favourite activities.



We understand from the text that _____ .

- A) they prefer spending time with their friends to going to a concert
- B) most teenagers don't like going to the theatre
- C) they generally prefer spending time with their friends
- D) %20 of them prefer being close to nature

9. Which of the following pictures IS NOT related to the list?

**BASIC EQUIPMENT
FOR CAMPING**

- torch
- map
- compass
- sleeping bag
- tent

A)



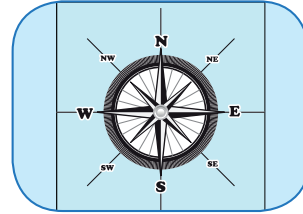
B)



C)



D)



10. Marie likes reading books, camping and taking her dog for a walk. She dislikes exercising and playing an instrument.

Which picture shows an activity that Marie enjoys?

A)



B)



C)



D)



IN THE KITCHEN

Cooking and baking is both physical and mental therapy.

-Mary Berry



We are going to learn :

- 📌 describing simple processes
- 📌 expressing preferences
- 📌 making simple inquiries

UNIT 3

UNIT 3 IN THE KITCHEN

Common Expressions

It's easy to make an omelette.

I'll try it as soon as possible.

Which country does pasta belong to?

I have a sweet tooth.

Let's start.

What can I use to cook soup?

Do I use two or three eggs?

How many steps are there in the recipe?

How much butter do you need?

How long does it take to bake cookies?

What is the following step after mixing?

What are the ingredients of a cake?

How do you usually cook chicken?

Let me tell you how to make an omelette.

First, put some oil into a pan.

Second, mix two eggs in a bowl.

Then add some salt.

After that, add some cheese and milk.

Finally, pour the mixture into the hot pan.

Serve it hot.

How do you serve soup?

What is the process?

Omlet yapmak çok kolay.

En kısa zamanda deneyeceğim.

Makarna hangi ülkeye ait?

Ben tatlıya düşkünüm.

Hadi başlayalım.

Çorba yapmak için ne kullanabilirim?

İki yumurta mı üç yumurta mı kullanayım?

Tarifte kaç adım var?

Ne kadar tereyağına ihtiyacın var?

Kurabiyelerin pişmesi ne kadar sürer?

Karıştırmadan sonraki adım nedir?

Bir kekin malzemeleri nelerdir?

Tavuğu genelde nasıl pişirirsin?

Sana omletin nasıl yapıldığını anlatayım.

İlk olarak bir tavaya yağ koy.

İkinci olarak bir kasede 2 yumurtayı karıştır.

Daha sonra tuz ekle.

Ondan sonra peynir ve süt ekle.

Son olarak karışımı sıcak tavaya dök.

Sıcak servis et.

Çorbayı nasıl servis edersin?

Yapım aşaması / süreç nedir?



VOCABULARY 1

COOKING VERBS

grill	ızgarada pişirmek	put	koymak
serve	servis etmek	mix	karıştırmak
fry	kızartmak	pour	dökmek
bake	fırında pişirmek	drain	süzme, suyunu çekmek
roast	fırında kızartmak	boil	kaynatmak
prepare	hazırlamak	chop	doğramak
cook	pişirmek	peel	soymak
marinate	terbiye etmek	dice	küp küp kesmek
season	baharat katmak, çeşnilendirmek	spread	yaymak / sürmek
taste	tatmak	sprinkle	serpmek
add	eklemek	crack	kırmak
whisk	çırpmak	rinse	durulamak
knead	yoğurmak	crush	ezmek
shape	şekil vermek	cover	kaplamak
mash	ezmek, püre yapmak	slice	dilimlemek
roll	yuvarlamak	tie	birleştirmek
cut	kesmek	heat	ısıtmak
squeeze	sıkmak	stir	karıştırmak
grate	rendelemek	steam	buharda pişirmek
place	yerleştirmek		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Write the verbs under the pictures.

grill

bake

whisk

knead

drain

spread

grate

slice

1.



knead

2.



grate

3.



grill

4.



drain

5.



slice

6.



spread

7.



whisk

8.



bake

2

Fill in the blanks with the given verbs below.

crack

squeeze

mash

pour

rinse

heat

add

chop

1. Firstly, put some oil into a pan and heat it.
2. Crack two eggs in a big bowl.
3. I always wash the dishes with some washing-up liquid and rinse them.
4. Can you mash the potatoes and mix in the butter?
5. This soup isn't tasty. Let's add some salt and spices to it.
6. Chop two tomatoes and an onion for the salad, please.
7. You should pour a glass of milk over the mixture.
8. Can you squeeze two lemons for me? I need some lemon juice.

3

Put the letters into the correct order to find the verbs. Then write them in the spaces.

1. inksprrle
sprinkle
2. uscrh
crush
3. ilbo
boil
4. cedi
dice
5. irst
stir
6. elpe
peel
7. inatmare
marinate
8. asosen
season
9. parpree
prepare
10. vecor
cover

4

Match the halves to make a phrase.

- | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1. knead | <u>7</u> a. the onions |
| 2. season | <u>6</u> b. the pasta |
| 3. whisk | <u>1</u> c. the dough |
| 4. mash | <u>4</u> d. the potatoes |
| 5. heat | <u>5</u> e. the oil |
| 6. drain | <u>8</u> f. the cookies |
| 7. chop | <u>3</u> g. the eggs |
| 8. shape | <u>2</u> h. the chicken |

VOCABULARY 2

TRADITIONAL DISHES

Sushi	→	Suşi
Samosa	→	üçgen şekilde geleneksel bir Güney Asya yemeği
Pizza	→	Pizza
Taco	→	Tako, geleneksel bir Meksika yemeği
Steak	→	Biftek
Manti	→	Manti

EXERCISES

1

Match the traditional dishes to the pictures.

a. Samosa

b. Manti

c. Pizza

d. Taco

e. Steak

f. Sushi

1.



f

2.



a

3.



d

4.



c

5.



b

6.



e

2

Fill in the gaps with the words below.

samosas

steak

sushi

manti

1. **Billy** : How about going to the new Japanese restaurant?
Edison : Great idea. I feel like eating some delicious sushi.

2. **Manti** _____ is a traditional dish in Turkey. It is a small piece of dough filled with minced meat. It is served with garlicky yogurt.
3. **Sandra** : Do you like Indian cuisine?
Laura : Yeah! I love spicy Indian dishes. Samosas are my favorite.
4. **Edward** : My favorite food is steak.
It is a high quality beef grilled or fried.
Brian : I agree with you. I love it, too!

VOCABULARY 3

VERB PHRASES

graduate from	→	... -den mezun olmak	cut into halves	→	yarıya bölmek
step into	→	adım atmak	be famous for	→	ile ünlü olmak
take part in	→	yer almak	belongs to	→	ait olmak
related to	→	ilgili olmak	have a sweet tooth	→	tatlıya zaafı olmak/ düşkün olmak
go well with something	→	bir şey ile iyi gitmek			

EXERCISES

1

Fill in the gaps with the verb phrases below.

goes well with

are famous for

have a sweet tooth

belongs to

cut them into halves

- Many people have a sweet tooth. They never refuse chocolate, ice-cream or cookies.
- Sushi belongs to Japan, but it's a world-famous food.
- Fred** : What shall I do with these strawberries?
Helin : Cut them into halves, please.
- I think lemonade always goes well light snacks.
- India and Mexico are famous for their spicy dishes.

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- Arda Türkmen **graduated from** / **stepped into** his professional life when he was young.
- Pizza and pasta **belong to** / **famous for** Italy.
- Sarah takes **part in** / **has a sweet tooth**. She eats lots of chocolate every day.
- What is your country **famous for** / **belongs to**?
- Nora wants to **go well with** / **take part in** a cookery workshop.

VOCABULARY 4

KITCHEN TOOLS

spoon	→	kaşık	mixing bowl	→	karıştırma kasesi
teaspoon	→	çay kaşığı	baking tray	→	fırın tepsi
tablespoon	→	yemek kaşığı	pot	→	tencere
ice-cream spoon	→	dondurma kaşığı	bowl	→	kase
fork	→	çatal	bottle	→	şişe
knife	→	bıçak	glass	→	bardak
pan	→	tava	cup	→	fincan
saucepan	→	tencere, derin tava	peeler	→	soyacak
plate	→	tabak	blender	→	karıştırıcı
oven	→	fırın	grater	→	rende

EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. tbtol | <u>bottle</u> | 7. asgls | <u>glass</u> |
| 2. lesptaboon | <u>tablespoon</u> | 8. ucepsaan | <u>saucepan</u> |
| 3. ndbleer | <u>blender</u> | 9. atple | <u>plate</u> |
| 4. elpeer | <u>peeler</u> | 10. eovn | <u>oven</u> |
| 5. tegrar | <u>grater</u> | 11. ifkne | <u>knife</u> |
| 6. ospon | <u>spoon</u> | 12. wbol | <u>bowl</u> |

2

Match the verbs to the kitchen tools.



- | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|
| 1. bake | <u>7</u> | a. glass |
| 2. cut | <u>6</u> | b. bowl |
| 3. drain | <u>8</u> | c. teaspoon |
| 4. eat | <u>2</u> | d. knife |
| 5. boil | <u>1</u> | e. oven |
| 6. mix | <u>4</u> | f. fork |
| 7. drink | <u>3</u> | g. strainer |
| 8. stir | <u>5</u> | h. saucepan |



3

Match the words with the pictures.

a. peeler

c. saucepan

e. baking tray

b. pan

d. oven

f. grater

1.



f

2.



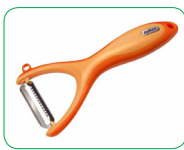
d

3.



c

4.



a

5.



b

6.



e

4

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- You need a large **pan** / **pot** to make soup.
- You should add a **teaspoon** / **fork** of salt to the mixture.
- For this dessert, there is no need to preheat the **blender** / **oven**.
- Crack two eggs in a medium-sized **baking tray** / **bowl**.
- There isn't any milk in the **bottle** / **peeler**.
- I'm looking for the **strainer** / **cup** to drain the pasta.
- Adding two **graters** / **cups** of sugar is the next step of this recipe.
- Use a sharp **knife** / **tablespoon** to chop the onions.

5

Fill in the blanks with the words given below.

- spoon mixing bowl saucepan
 bottles blender

- I prefer glass **bottles** because they are healthy and eco-friendly.
- This food isn't very pleasant to eat. I think I should add a **spoon** of honey to it to make it taste better.
- My mother doesn't like using a **blender** to mix food. She always uses a fork or a spoon.
- Pauline boiled some pasta in a big **saucepan** for her guests yesterday.
- I need a small **mixing bowl** to put the liquid ingredients in.

VOCABULARY 5

ADJECTIVES

well-known	→	tanınmış	large	→	geniş, büyük
freshly squeezed	→	taze sıkılmış	powdered	→	toz haline getirilmiş
professional	→	profesyonel	soft	→	yumuşak
sour	→	ekşi	preheated	→	önceden ısıtılmış
rich	→	zengin	tasty	→	lezzetli
different	→	farklı	fresh	→	taze
various	→	çeşitli	handful	→	bir tutam
particular	→	özel	homemade	→	ev yapımı
practical	→	pratik	salty	→	tuzlu
easy	→	kolay	fatty	→	yağlı
sweet	→	tatlı	crushed	→	ezilmiş
spicy	→	baharatlı	traditional	→	geleneksel
medium	→	orta			

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the words below.

- crushed sour preheated professional
 traditional freshly squeezed fatty homemade

- Gordon Ramsey is a **professional** chef. He has amazing recipes and cooking styles.
- Sushi is a **traditional** Japanese dish.
- Judy's mother baked these cookies yesterday. They are **homemade**.
- Thomas drinks a glass of **freshly-squeezed** orange juice every morning.
- Lemons are **sour** and chocolate is sweet.
- Junk food is unhealthy because it's **fatty**.
- Now you need to add two cloves of **crushed** garlic to the mixture.
- Julia baked some delicious chocolate cookies in the **preheated** oven an hour ago.

2

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the words below.

tasty

salty

large

sour

spicy

rich

well-known

soft

1.



This lemonade is too sour to drink.

2.



Mexican food is usually spicy.

3.



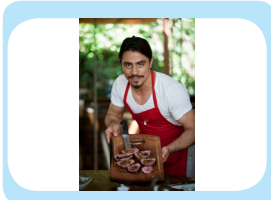
I love my mother's cookies. They are tasty.

4.



Turkish cuisine is very rich. They have lots of traditional dishes.

5.



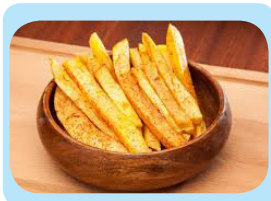
Nusret is a well-known chef in the world. People love his meat recipes.

6.



Cakes are soft and sweet.

7.



French fries are too salty to eat.

8.



We need a large mixing bowl to prepare the ingredients.

3

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

1. Harry sometimes puts some powdered (derepowd) milk in his coffee.
2. Children should eat fresh (esfrh) fruit and vegetables because they are healthy.
3. Add a handful (dfuhanl) of herbs to the soup to make it taste better.
4. Gary wants to bake different (ferdifent) cookies today.
5. You can find lots of practical (cticpraal) pasta recipes on this website.
6. I think it's not easy (seay) to cook lentil soup.
7. Cakes and cookies are sweet (eswet).
8. Tony is a great chef, so he has various (iovarus) reasons to write a cookery book.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

4

Find and circle the words in the word-search puzzle.

POWDERED
PARTICULAR

SWEET
TASTY

TRADITIONAL
FRESH

VARIOUS
HANDFUL

I	Y	S	N	G	O	W	Z	Z	B	J	S	N	F	F	X	F
Q	K	W	P	O	W	D	E	R	E	D	C	C	T	X	E	F
Y	G	E	T	Y	K	Q	O	G	M	S	I	R	A	A	X	S
G	J	E	B	R	D	A	Y	C	X	L	L	Y	S	J	G	A
V	Z	T	V	R	L	U	V	G	D	P	O	A	T	T	B	F
D	R	J	U	Y	Q	P	T	D	R	H	L	M	Y	P	N	X
M	E	N	T	R	A	D	I	T	I	O	N	A	L	X	R	W
L	D	S	D	N	B	E	G	T	B	S	N	C	U	Y	H	Q
L	H	A	N	D	F	U	L	T	G	Y	M	M	Y	N	Y	X
X	H	J	P	A	R	T	I	C	U	L	A	R	W	L	G	H
J	N	U	M	A	T	K	B	E	T	F	R	E	S	H	O	D
U	C	Y	Q	M	H	C	Z	N	G	V	A	R	I	O	U	S
E	J	W	Z	V	T	X	U	A	O	X	W	P	J	V	M	O

VOCABULARY 6

INGREDIENTS

meat	→	et	butter	→	tereyağı
chicken	→	tavuk	sugar	→	şeker
salt	→	tuz	dough	→	hamur
pepper	→	biber	honey	→	bal
oil	→	yağ	mince	→	kıyma
olive oil	→	zeytin yağı	breadcrumbs	→	ekmek kırıntıları
vinegar	→	sirke	black pepper	→	karabiber
spice	→	baharat	cumin	→	kimyon
herb	→	bitki / ot	coconut powder	→	hindistan cevizi tozu
egg	→	yumurta	red pepper	→	kırmızı biber
cheese	→	peynir	lentil	→	mercimek
milk	→	süt	cocoa	→	kakao
bitter chocolate	→	siyah çikolata	cinnamon	→	tarçın
vanilla	→	vanilya	flour	→	un
rice	→	pirinç	rice flour	→	pirinç unu

EXERCISES

1

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

- To marinate the **cinnamon** / **chicken** you can use a mixture of red and black pepper and salt.
- Knead the **dough** / **rice** until it gets soft. Then you can roll it.
- When I feel ill, I always have spicy **lentil** / **oil** soup to get well.
- Sharon has a sweet tooth. She eats at least two bars of **crackers** / **bitter chocolate** every day.
- I need to buy some **minced** / **spicy** beef to make some meatballs for lunch.


2

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

- I don't want any vinegar (egvinar) for my salad.
- Some people like fish with cumin (micun) sauce.
- I prefer using some cinnamon (namcinon) when I bake cookies.
- Fred is going to buy some honey (nehoy) for breakfast.
- I don't prefer using brown sugar (asugr) in my tea.

3 Write each word / phrase under the correct picture.

- coconut powder
- honey
- cheese
- rice flour
- dough
- vinegar
- breadcrumbs
- cinnamon

1. 

cinnamon

2. 


coconut powder

3. 

honey

4. 

cheese

5. 

rice flour

6. 

dough

7. 

breadcrumbs

8. 

vinegar

4 There are the names of 8 ingredients in the word-search puzzle. Find them and circle.

I	A	U	O	I	L	D	O	U	G	H	I	I	O	K
B	X	L	P	R	F	J	U	W	E	C	Y	V	E	G
S	D	N	S	C	X	N	M	P	Y	I	Q	A	D	Z
H	C	Z	A	T	Y	K	G	F	P	V	P	N	C	D
L	G	D	C	R	F	A	S	W	D	Y	U	I	E	H
E	P	E	Q	W	L	H	N	T	K	D	L	L	T	M
N	L	C	C	I	N	N	A	M	O	N	R	L	F	T
T	G	A	I	X	N	A	M	O	P	N	I	A	C	J
I	P	E	P	P	E	R	K	P	S	S	C	W	J	O
L	V	Q	L	C	H	E	E	S	E	B	E	L	I	O

VOCABULARY 7


FRUIT & VEGETABLES

pepper	→	biber	onion	→	soğan
tomato	→	domates	garlic	→	sarımsak
blueberry	→	yaban mersini	mint	→	nane
kiwi	→	kiwi	mint leaf	→	nane yaprağı
banana	→	muz	carrot	→	havuç
strawberry	→	çilek	potato	→	patates
grape	→	üzüm	parsley	→	maydanoz
cranberry	→	yabanmersini / kıvılcık	cucumber	→	salatalık
lemon	→	limon	basil	→	fesleğen

EXERCISES

1 Write the words under the pictures.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> basil | <input type="radio"/> cucumber | <input type="radio"/> mint | <input type="radio"/> grape |
| <input type="radio"/> blueberry | <input type="radio"/> garlic | <input type="radio"/> parsley | <input type="radio"/> pepper |

1.  pepper	2.  basil	3.  garlic	4.  cucumber
5.  grape	6.  mint	7.  blueberry	8.  parsley

2 Circle the odd one in each category.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. onion | pepper | carrot | blueberry |
| 2. garlic | strawberry | grape | kiwi |
| 3. parsley | mint | basil | banana |
| 4. cranberry | grape | blueberry | potato |
| 5. lemon | banana | grape | mint leaf |

3

Fill in the gaps with the words below.

 mint leaves

 carrots

 pepper

 lemon

 potatoes

 parsley

1. Serve your homemade lemonade with some mint leaves. They'll give the lemonade a fresh taste.
2. You should add a teaspoon of freshly squeezed lemon juice to your soup.
3. Can you boil and mash these potatoes for lunch, please?
4. I can't eat this pepper because it's too hot.
5. Olga prefers decorating her meals with some parsley. She loves this herb because she thinks it adds flavor to food.
6. People think that rabbits love carrots, but that's not completely true.

4

Fill in the gaps with the words below.



ACROSS

3. a long, thin, green vegetable with dark green skin, usually eaten uncooked in salads
4. a vegetable with a strong smell and flavour
5. a small juicy red fruit that has small brown seeds on its surface
8. a long, thin and orange vegetable

DOWN

1. a small, round, red fruit with a sour taste
2. an oval fruit that has a yellow skin and sour juice
6. a long, curved fruit with a yellow skin and soft, sweet, white flesh inside
7. a round and usually yellow vegetable that grows underground

VOCABULARY 8

NOUNS

cuisine	→	mutfak (Türk mutfağı ...vb.)	ingredient	→	içerik / malzeme
meal	→	yemek	process	→	süreç
sauce	→	sos	cracker	→	kraker
experience	→	deneyim	salad	→	salata
step	→	adım	pancake	→	krep
piece	→	parça	flat	→	düz
guest	→	misafir	bread	→	ekmek
method	→	yöntem	rest	→	kalan
preparation	→	hazırlık	fridge	→	buzdolabı
workshop	→	uygulama, atölye	biscuit	→	bisküvi
tip	→	ipucu	walnut	→	ceviz
clue	→	ipucu	mixture	→	karışım
half	→	yarım	surface	→	yüzey
field	→	alan	place	→	yer
omelette	→	omlet	soup	→	çorba
pasta	→	makarna	gastronomy	→	yemek sanatı
cookie	→	kurabiye	department	→	bölüm
recipe	→	tarif	pinch	→	tutam
clove	→	diş (sarımsak)			

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

professional life	→	iş hayatı
cooking method	→	yemek pişirme metodu
fruit salad	→	meyve salatası
lemon juice	→	limon suyu
vegetable soup	→	sebze çorbası
sweet tooth	→	tatlıya düşkünlük
culinary art	→	yemek pişirme sanatı

EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the noun / adjectives phrases.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------|------------|
| 1. sweet | <u>1</u> | a. tooth |
| 2. lemon | <u>7</u> | b. life |
| 3. Italian | <u>6</u> | c. soup |
| 4. culinary | <u>2</u> | d. juice |
| 5. fruit | <u>3</u> | e. cuisine |
| 6. vegetable | <u>8</u> | f. method |
| 7. professional | <u>4</u> | g. art |
| 8. cooking | <u>5</u> | h. salad |

2

Write the words under the pictures.

 pancakes walnuts crackers fridge cookies bread pasta clove

1.



crackers

2.



clove

3.



pasta

4.



walnuts

5.



pancakes

6.



fridge

7.



cookies

8.



bread

LEARN STEP BY STEP

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence

- Just add a **pinch** / rest of salt to the mixture, please.
- Sarah is a great cook. She has lots of roasted chicken **recipes** / steps.
- Marie** : How do you prepare this dish? Can you give me some information about its **surface** / **process**?
- Gerard** : Sure. It's very easy.
- My brother is going to attend a series of **workshops** / fields about Italian cuisine.
- Gary's mother always gives people helpful **crackers** / **tips** about how to cook pasta dishes.
- You should keep this pudding in the **method** / **fridge** for two hours because it's served cold.
- I helped my mother with the **preparation** / clue of the lunch yesterday.
- Gastronomy is a **mixture** / **field** related to cooking and serving.

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-13: For these questions, fill in the blanks with the correct options.

1. **Harold** : What should I use to cook pasta?
Julia : Half a packet of pasta, olive oil and some tomatoes for the _____.

A) cuisine
 C) sauce
B) garlic
D) cookie

2.



I prefer eating vegetable dishes because I don't eat _____. I am a vegetarian.

A) meat
C) pizza
B) fruit
D) herbs

3. I am keen on Japanese _____. Sushi is my favourite.

A) vinegar
C) sauces
B) peelers
 D) cuisine

4. Italian cuisine is especially _____ for pasta dishes.

A) sweet tooth
C) related to
B) famous
D) cooking method

5. I can't finish my day without eating ice-cream or chocolate. I have a _____.

A) professional life
C) walnut
B) sweet tooth
D) mint leaf

6. **Zach** : Which spices do I need for tomato soup?

Karim : You only need a _____ of salt. I sometimes prefer cumin, but you don't have to use it.

A) grater
C) strainer
B) fork
 D) teaspoon

7. **Fatma** : Which cuisine do you prefer?

Cemil : I prefer Indian cuisine. _____ are my favourite.

A) Tablespoons
C) Cucumbers
B) Cranberries
 D) Samosas

8. After cooking the pasta for about 10 minutes _____ it with a strainer.

A) drain
C) steam
B) crack
D) chop

9. Marinating is the process of leaving the _____ in the mixture of oil, vinegar, herbs and spices.

A) meat
C) fridge
B) cookie
D) pinch

10. Paul drinks lemonade and lemon juice every day because he's crazy about _____ drinks.

A) sour
C) spicy
B) tasty
D) crushed

11. A _____ is a very important kitchen tool. You can use it for breaking down foods or making smooth liquid ingredients.

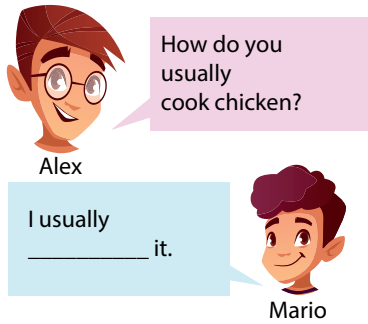
A) blender
C) saucepan
B) pot
D) glass

12. **Beryl** : What can I use to _____ this meat?

Tracy : You can use cumin and black pepper.

A) sprinkle
C) marinate
B) rinse
D) heat

13.



- A) grate B) roast
C) peel D) tie

14. Wolfgang Puck is a _____ American chef. He has interesting cooking methods and incredible recipes.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) famous B) professional
C) well-known D) handful

15.

- _____ ? _____
- vanilla - butter
- flour - vinegar
- milk - mince
- sugar - lentil

Choose the best title for the list above.

- A) Cucumbers B) Workshops
 C) Ingredients D) Fields

16. I'm fond of eating vegetables. Strawberries, bananas and cranberries are my favorite.

Which underlined word is WRONG?

- A) strawberries B) vegetables
C) bananas D) cranberries

17. I. mash → potatoes
II. marinate → chicken
III. chop → soup
IV. boil → water

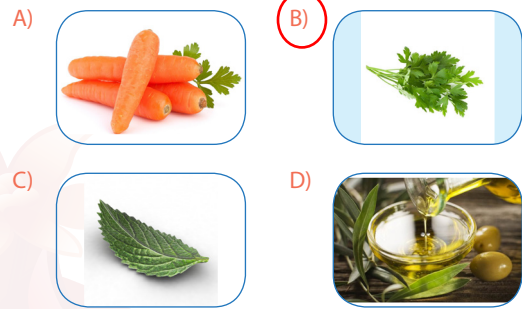
Which pair is WRONG?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

18.



Which picture IS NOT related to the list above?



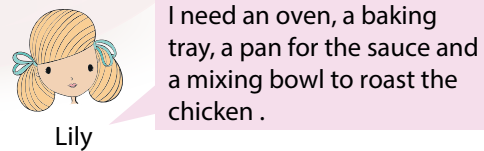
19.



Which verb DOES NOT match with one of the pictures above?

- A) season B) whisk
C) chop D) spread

20.



Which of the following IS NOT one of the kitchen tools that Lilly needs for roasting chicken?



GRAMMAR 1

Describing Simple Processes

• Sequence Adverbs

We use the sequence adverbs "**first**", "**next**", "**then**", "**after that**" and "**finally**" to describe the order in which two or more actions happen or if there are number of steps in an instruction.

First,	→	boil some water in a kettle.
Second,	→	pour the water in a cup.
Next,	→	put the teabag into the water.
After that,	→	add some sugar and milk.
Finally,	→	take out the teabag and enjoy it.



IMPERATIVES

We usually use imperatives to give orders or instructions.



Positive Form

Add	a pinch of parsley.
Put	some olive oil.
Drain	the pasta with a strainer.
Stir	the coffee.



Negative Form

Don't	add	any salt to the soup.
	sprinkle	any parsley.
	chop	the onions.
	pour	any milk into my coffee.



EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct options in the recipe.

It is easy to make an omelette. You don't have to be a cook to make a great omelet. All you need is to follow a recipe. You need two eggs, some butter, some cheese, some milk and some salt and pepper.

First / **Then**, put some butter into a pan and heat it. **Second** / **Finally**, mix two eggs in a mixing bowl.

Then / **First**, add some cheese and milk. **After that** / **Second**, pour the mixture into the hot pan.

Finally / **Next**, add some salt and black pepper and serve it. Bon Appetite!

2

Put the sentences into the correct order.

- (2) Second, cut them into small pieces.
- (5) Finally, add the lemon juice and some honey.
- (4) After that, squeeze the lemon.
- (3) Put them into a small bowl, and then add some blueberries and cranberries.
- (1) First, peel the apples and bananas.



LEARN STEP BY STEP

3

Circle and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

1. Serving your freshly squeezed lemonade with mint leaves.
Serve
2. Doesn't add more than a teaspoon of salt to the steak.
Don't
3. After covering the carrot balls with coconut powder, let's it cool for 1 hour.
let
4. First you can serve your grilled steak with herbs.
Finally
5. Pours the sauce and serve it.
Pour
6. You put some oil into the pan and heat it.
Put

GRAMMAR 2

Expressing Preferences

We use 'prefer' to express our preferences.

Positive Form

I We You They	prefer	cooking pasta.
He She It	prefers	fresh fruit.

Negative Form

I We You They	don't prefer	eating pizza.
He She It	doesn't prefer	grilling meat.

Question Form

Do	I we you they	prefer	making an omelette to frying potatoes?
Does	he she it	prefer	Turkish cuisine to American cuisine?

EXERCISE

Circle the correct option in each sentence

- Kim** : Does Ali **prefer** / **prefers** homemade lemonade?
Recep : No, he thinks it is a bit sour. He **prefer** / **prefers** drinking fruit juice.
- Alp is a well-known Turkish chef. He **prefer** / **prefers** taking part in each step of preparing, cooking and serving.
- Sally** : **Do** / **Does** you prefer roasting or frying chicken?
Lilly : I generally **prefer** / **prefers** roasting it, but I rarely fry it.
- My father and I **prefer** / **prefers** fruit salad in summers, but my mom **doesn't prefer** / **doesn't prefers** it. She **prefer** / **prefers** carrot balls.
- Mahmut and Buse **don't** / **doesn't** prefer Indian cuisine.
- Patricia** : Which one **do** / **does** you prefer? Pizza or pasta?
Carol : I **prefer** / **prefers** pasta.
- I don't know what she **prefer** / **prefers** eating, but I'm sure everyone likes my pasta with tomato sauce.
- He doesn't **prefer** / **prefers** using a knife while eating meat. He only uses a fork.

GRAMMAR 3

Making Simple Inquiries

Can / Can't

"Can" is used to talk about abilities/inabilities, requests and possibilities. "can't" is the negative form of "can".

Positive Form

I We You They He She It	can	shape the dough by kneading.
---	-----	------------------------------

Negative Form

I We You They He She It	can't / can not	roast chicken.
---	-----------------	----------------

Question Form

Can	I we you they he she it	cook pizza?
-----	---	-------------

Short Answers

I you we Yes, he she it	they can.	I you we No, they can not. / can't. he she it
--	-----------	---

EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of 'can'.

- Selin is a great cook. She can cook delicious meals.
- Kevin** : How well can you bake chocolate cookies.
Nancy : To be honest, I'm terrible at cooking. I can't even cook pasta.
- Sally** : Can you chop the onions for me?
Mark : Sure.
- I can't cook meatballs. It's too difficult for me.

Should / Shouldn't

We use **should** and **shouldn't** to give advice or talk about what we think is right or wrong.



Positive Form

I We You They He She It	should	use three eggs for the omelette.
---	--------	----------------------------------



Negative Form

I We You They He She It	shouldn't	eat pasta every day.
---	-----------	----------------------



Question Form

Should	I we you they he she it	add some more salt?
--------	---	---------------------



Short Answers

I you we Yes, they should. he she it	I you we No, they should not. / shouldn't. he she it
--	--



EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- You **should** / **shouldn't** put too much salt in your lentil soup.
- Marie** : **Should** / **Can** you chop the onions when I am grating the carrots?
Kevin : Sure. I'll be happy to help you.
- Henry **can** / **should** use many cooking methods in the kitchen. He's very good at cooking.
- Before grilling meat, you **can** / **should** leave it in a mixture of vinegar, oil and herbs to make it taste better.
- Helen** : What should I do to lose weight?
David : You **should** / **shouldn't** eat fatty meals and you **should** / **shouldn't** prefer healthy dishes like vegetable soup and salad.
- Kim** : How much salt **should** / **can** I add to the beef?
Vernon : You should add a teaspoon of salt after cooking it.



ATTENTION!



Study the dialogues in the box.

- A** : Do I use two or three eggs to make an omelette?
B : Use three eggs because I am very hungry today.
- A** : How much sugar do you need for the cookies?
B : A cup of sugar is enough.
- A** : How many steps are there in the recipe?
B : There are four steps.
- A** : How long does it take to cook pasta?
B : It takes 8 minutes. If you want to prepare some sauce you need 10 more minutes.

2

Fill in the blanks with the words / phrases below.

how much

do I use

can

how many

how long

should

- Helin** : How many _____ bananas do we have at home?
Melek : There are seven bananas, but we need 5 more.
- You can _____ make tasty cakes with this recipe.
- Bariş** : Do I use _____ 2 or 3 cloves of garlic?
Seda : 2 cloves of garlic will be enough, but you can use more if you like.
- Marco** : How much _____ milk should I add to the mixture?
Felicia : Add 4 cups of milk and let it cool.
- If you want to be fit, you should _____ do sports and eat healthy food.
- Kevin** : How long _____ does it take to make an omelette?
Richard : It takes only 15 minutes.

GRAMMAR TEST |

1 – 5 : For these questions, choose the correct options according to the passage.

In the morning, I usually prefer drinking Turkish coffee because it makes me feel energetic. It's very easy to make Turkish coffee. You (1) _____ make great coffee at home by following this recipe. (2) _____, put a tablespoon of coffee into a coffee pot. Second, (3) _____ a teaspoon of sugar and stir. And (4) _____ pour a cup of water into the coffee pot. Finally, stir it while boiling over medium heat. Your coffee is ready. Good appetite. If you want your coffee to taste better, you (5) _____ use cold water.

1.

A) should	<input checked="" type="radio"/> B) can
C) prefer	D) can't
2.

A) Finally	B) Then
C) After that	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) First
3.



<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) add	B) added
C) adding	D) adds
4.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) then	B) first
C) after	D) next
5.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) should	B) dislike
C) prefer	D) like

6 – 16 : For these questions, choose the correct options to fill in the blanks.

6.

	_____ does it take to roast chicken?
Jason	
	It takes 20 minutes to prepare it, and 40 minutes to roast it.
Will	

A) How much	B) How well
C) How many	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) How long
7. My sister _____ Japanese cuisine to American cuisine.

A) prefer	B) is prefer
<input checked="" type="radio"/> C) prefers	D) preferring
8. Susan : _____ you prefer cooking pizza or chicken?
 Laura : I usually prefer cooking pizza because I am keen on Italian cuisine.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) Do	B) Which
C) Does	D) How often
9. Dorothy _____ hot drinks like tea or coffee.

A) don't prefer	B) doesn't prefers
<input checked="" type="radio"/> C) doesn't prefer	D) isn't prefer
10. Kimberly : You shouldn't _____ too much ice cream. It's unhealthy.
 Daniel : You're right, but I have a sweet tooth.

A) to eat	<input checked="" type="radio"/> B) eat
C) eating	D) to eating

11. **Mary** : What _____ I use to cook rice?

Sarah : A glass of rice, some butter, half a lemon, two glasses of water.

- A) should
 C) prefer
 B) am
 D) does

12. If you want sweet food for your breakfast, you _____ make honey pancakes. They are very delicious.

- A) does
 B) are
 C) should
 D) doesn't

13. First, peel the potatoes and wash them. Cut them into slices. And then pour some oil into a pan and heat it. _____, put the potatoes into the pan and add some salt. Finally, serve it hot.

- A) After that
 C) Or
 B) After
 D) Second

14. **Fevzi** : How do you marinate meat?

Pinar : I usually prefer preparing a mixture of vinegar, olive oil, cumin and black pepper. However, you _____ add some red pepper if you like.

- A) do
 C) are
 B) shouldn't
 D) can

15. Ayşe has a sweet tooth. She _____ eating fruit salad, ice-cream and cookies.

- A) can
 C) should
 B) prefer
 D) prefers

16. **Edward** : Is it easy to cook pasta?

Michael : Yes, it is. _____ me tell you how to cook it.

- A) Can
 C) Let
 B) Do
 D) Should

17. **I.** Next, knead it well until it's soft.

II. Second, put the powdered sugar and then add the other ingredients.

III. Finally, bake in the preheated oven for 15 minutes.

IV. First, mix the egg and butter.

V. After that, put it into a baking tray.

Put the sentences into the CORRECT order.

- A) I – IV – II – III – V
 C) IV – II – I – V – III
 B) IV – II – V – I – III
 D) I – II – IV – III – V

18. **I.** Do you prefer cooking rice or lentil soup?

II. What does Steve prefer eat for lunch?

III. You should use two tablespoons of olive oil.

IV. First, heating some butter in a large pan.

V. Matilda loves cooking and eating pasta dishes.

VI. It's very difficult to making meatballs.

How many sentences above are grammatically WRONG?

- A) 2
 B) 6
 C) 5
 D) 3

19. should / ingredients / What / I / to / cook / use / pasta ?

Which of the following is the CORRECT order of the question above?

- A) What should I use to cook pasta ingredients?
 B) What ingredients should I use to cook pasta?
 C) What should I cook to use pasta ingredients?
 D) What should I cook to use pasta ingredients?

20. _____ , mix the flour, sugar, baking powder and salt in a large bowl. Second, make a hole in the centre of the mixture and pour in the milk, egg and melted butter. Mix well. _____ , put some oil in a pan and heat it. _____ , cook each pancake on both sides and serve hot.

Which of the following IS NOT suitable to fill in one of the gaps in the text?

- A) Then
 C) Finally
 B) First
 D) After

READING

1. Read and circle the correct options in the recipe.

Steak Time!

Irish Proverb: 'Laughter is brightest where the food is best.'

Today I am going to give you a fascinating recipe and make you laugh.

Ingredients

- 500 grams of boneless beef
- An onion
- Some honey
- 3 cloves of garlic
- Some black pepper, cumin and salt
- 3 tablespoons of olive oil
- A butter
- A cup of milk



Process

- First, grate the **honey / onion** and cloves into a large bowl.
- Second, pour the **honey / butter** into it. Then add some black pepper and cumin.
- Next, put the beef into a bowl and pour a cup of **olive oil / milk** and leave for 15 minutes.
- Then tie the mixture of onion, garlic, honey and **milk / spices** with the beef before adding 3 tablespoons of olive oil.
- Knead the new mixture for 10 minutes.
- Heat the **butter / salt** in a pan, and put the mixture into it.
- After it is cooked, add some **salt / flour**.
- You can serve it with some **herbs / rice** flour if you like.



Bon Appetite!

2. Read the information again to mark the statements as 'T' for True, 'F' for False and 'NG' for Not Given.

1. We don't need any sweet ingredients for this dish.
2. We need to use some liquid ingredients to cook the steak.
3. It takes 15 minutes to prepare this dish.
4. This is a traditional English dish.
5. The dish includes some spices and vegetables.
6. You should only eat this dish at lunch time.

T / **F** / NG
T / F / NG
T / **F** / NG
T / F / **NG**
T / F / NG
T / F / **NG**

3. Which of the following questions IS NOT answered?

- A) How can I serve this dish?
- B) How much milk do I need to use for this dish?
- C) What should I do after grating the onion?
- D) For how many people is this dish?**

1.



Sila

I am keen on cooking chicken. I love cooking and eating it. I usually prefer roasting chicken.

Which picture shows Sila's cooking method?

A)



B)



C)



D)



2.

SAUCY BAKED CHICKEN

Step 1

Heat the oven to 200° C and put two tomatoes, 3 cloves of garlic and some olive oil into a baking tray.

Step 2

Season the chicken with a teaspoon of black pepper, two teaspoons of salt and ½ teaspoon of cumin.

Step 3

Put the seasoned chicken into the baking tray and put the tray into the oven.

Step 4

Roast until the chicken is browned (40 to 45 minutes) and serve it warm.

Which picture is related to the final step of the recipe?

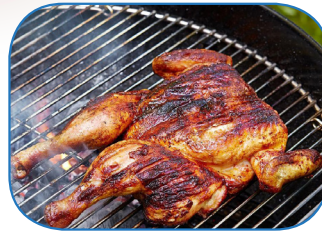
A)



B)



C)



D)



3. **Sally** : I'm very hungry. I want to eat some sweet food for breakfast.

Terry : Sure. _____ .

Sally : Great idea. We need to check the ingredients.

Choose the best option to complete the dialogue.

- A) I don't have a sweet tooth
- B) We can prepare a meat dish
- C) Let's make some honey pancakes
- D) I prefer spicy food to sour food

4. **Kerem** : _____?

Diego : Yes, it's very tasty. I'm very keen on Japanese cuisine.

Kerem : _____?

Diego : No, not really. I don't prefer hot and spicy food.

Kerem : Oh, really. I love spicy food. By the way, I'm so hungry, and I want to eat out. _____?

Diego : That's a good idea, but take me to a nice Japanese restaurant, please. I feel like eating some sushi.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT Kerem ask Diego?

- A) What about Mexican dishes
- B) Do you like sushi
- C) Would you like to join me
- D) Do you prefer pasta to sushi

5. **Waiter** : Would you like some dessert after your main course?

Tom : No, thanks. _____ .

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the dialogue?

- A) I don't prefer sweet food
- B) I have a sweet tooth
- C) I'm on a diet
- D) I don't want any dessert

6. I. Mix the dry ingredients.
- II. Knead the dough.
- III. Roll out the dough.
- IV. Shape the cookies.
- V. Bake the cookies in the oven.

Which picture shows the second step of the recipe?

A)



B)



C)



D)



7 – 8: Answer these questions according to the passage.

Budy Valastro is a well-known pastry chef. He is a real professional in the field of making pastries, breads and other baked foods. He is the owner of Carlo's Baker Shop. Moreover, he has 5 more pastry shops in New Jersey. He stepped into the kitchen when he was seventeen years old and started to work with his father. When his father died, he started to work as "Cake Boss".

7. The passage tells us about _____.

- A) the cakes of Carlo's Baker Shop
- B) a famous chef's professional life
- C) the meaning of "Cake Boss"
- D) the university education of Budy Valastro

8. Budy Valastro _____.

- A) has 5 pastry shops
- B) became "Cake Boss" at the age of 17
- C) works at his father's resaurant in New Jersey
- D) is a world-famous pastry chef

9.



Tank

I like adding some freshly squeezed lemon juice to my lentil soup.

My favorite meal is meatballs. My mother cooks delicious meatballs for me every Saturday.



Ferhat



Burcu

I prefer eating sweet food at breakfast. For example honey pancakes are my favourites.

I love grilled fish and steamed vegetables.



Merve

Which of the following is FALSE?

- A) Tank hates sour food or drinks.
- B) Ferhat eats a meat dish on Saturday.
- C) Burcu has a sweet tooth.
- D) Merve prefers healthy cooking methods.

10.



Sarah

I usually fry it. It's very tasty.

I think grilling is the best way to cook chicken.



Hannah

How do you cook chicken?



Mark

I always roast chicken.

I prefer cooking chicken with vegetables.



Neil

Who prefers an unhealthy cooking method?

- A) Sarah
- B) Mark
- C) Hannah
- D) Neil

ON THE PHONE

If you think back to the beginning of cell phones, laptops or really any new technology, it's always expensive.

-Elon Musk



We are going to learn :

- 📎 following phone conversations
- 📎 stating decisions at the time of speaking

UNIT 4

UNIT 4 ON THE PHONE

Common Expressions

Hang / Hold on a minute.

Please, hang on.

Can / Could you hold on a minute, please?

Buse is speaking.

Hello! Peter calling.

Is Ali there?

Could/May/Can I speak to Mr. Watson?

I'll call you back.

I'll get back to you in an hour.

Will we meet up?

Keep calm.

I'll be there on time.

I'll tell him to call you.

Could/May/Can I help you?

Would you like to leave a message?

Could / Can you repeat, please?

We will meet up soon, then.

We will meet next Saturday, then.

I am sorry to hear that.

He has gone out.

I'm afraid he isn't available at the moment.

Could you tell him to call me back today?

He'll get back to you as soon possible.

It's a bad line.

I'll put you through the headmaster.

I'll see you at the café tomorrow.

Don't hang up the phone, please.

Thanks for calling.

How do you keep in touch with your friends?

I can't hear you well.

How do you spell your name and surname?

Could you tell her to contact me?

Bir dakika bekleyin.

Lütfen bekleyin.

Bir dakika bekler misiniz, lütfen?

Buse konuşuyor/Ben Buse.

Merhaba! Peter arıyor.

Ali orada mı?

Bay Watson ile konuşabilir miyim?

Seni geri arayacağım.

Bir saat içinde seni/sizi geri arayacağım.

Görüşecek miyiz?

Sakin ol.

Tam zamanında orada olacağım.

Seni aramasını söyleyeceğim.

Yardımcı olabilir miyim?

Mesaj bırakmak ister misiniz?

Tekrar eder misin lütfen?

O zaman yakında görüşeceğiz.

O zaman gelecek Cumartesi görüşürüz.

Bunu duyduğuma üzülüm.

O dışarı çıktı.

Korkarım şu an müsait değil.

Ona beni bugün aramasını söyler misin?

En kısa zamanda size geri dönecek.

Kötü / bozuk / cızırtılı hat.

Sizi müdüre aktarıyorum.

Yarın kafede görüşürüz.

Telefonu kapatma lütfen.

Aradığın için teşekkürler.

Arkadaşlarınla nasıl iletişim de kalırsın?

Seni iyi duyamıyorum.

İsminizi ve soy isminizi nasıl kodlarsınız?

Benimle iletişime geçmesini söyler misin?

VOCABULARY 1

ADJECTIVES

embarrassed	utanmış, mahcup
crazy	çılgın
smart	zeki
bored	sıkılmış
scared	korkmuş
lovely	sevimli, hoş
afraid	korkmuş
engaged	meşgul
easy	kolay, basit
polite	kibar, nazik
homeless	evsiz
possible	mümkün
sure	emin
harmful	zararlı

surprised	şaşkın, şaşırılmış
happy	mutlu
sleepy	uykulu
angry	kızgın
cool	havalı
generous	cömert
stranger	yabancı
latest	en son
expensive	pahalı
local	yerel
important	önemli
useful	faydalı, kullanışlı
loud	yüksek sesli, gürültülü
available	müsait

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Write the adjectives under the pictures.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> crazy | <input type="radio"/> surprised |
| <input type="radio"/> happy | <input type="radio"/> scared |
| <input type="radio"/> angry | <input type="radio"/> smart |
| <input type="radio"/> bored | <input type="radio"/> embarrassed |

1.



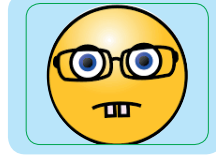
scared

2.



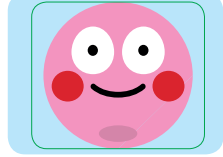
bored

3.



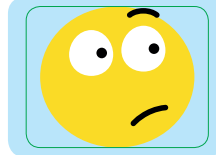
smart

4.



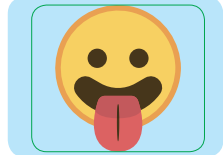
embarrassed

5.



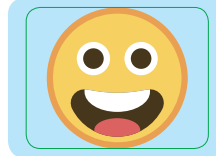
surprised

6.



crazy

7.



happy

8.



angry

2

Complete the sentences with the adjectives below.

 local

 homeless

 crazy

 surprised

 easy

 engaged

1. Where is the local authority in your neighbourhood? Somebody has to deal with all these problems.
2. This is such a crazy idea. I can't accept it.
3. You shouldn't be here. I'm so surprised.
4. I like this machine very much because it's easy to use.
5. Lora is homeless. She doesn't have a place to live in.
6. I can't put you through to Mr Watts because the line is engaged.

3

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

1. Oh! I'm so sorry. Can you speak loudly (relodu)? I can't hear you well.
2. I think mobile phones are very useful (flesuu) inventions.
3. Please be quiet! We are trying to explain how important (ttipmanor) this problem is.
4. Mr Green isn't available (eilalaavb) now. Please try again later.
5. Let's think about the harmful (lamruh) sides of using a smartphone.
6. I have to tell you the latest news. Don't forget to call me back as soon as possible (ioslepbs).
7. Jordan should go to bed because he's sleepy (yeespl).

4

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. I'm afraid / lovely the manager isn't available at the moment. He's in a meeting.
2. I always keep in touch with Jennifer because she is a bored / generous girl.
3. I felt very scared / possible when I saw the road accident yesterday.
4. Don't call him now because he is still angry / available with you.
5. I'm not interested in the engaged / latest technology at all.
6. Mike isn't available / local now. He'll get back to you when he's not busy.
7. Tony is a very loud / smart student. I'm so proud of him.
8. I think smartphones are harmful / embarrassed because they have lots of negative sides.

VOCABULARY 2

NOUNS

inviter	→	davet sahibi	garden	→	bahçe	ticket	→	bilet
line	→	hat, şebeke	headmaster	→	müdür	cinema	→	sinema
memo	→	kısa not	appointment	→	randevu	order	→	sipariş
reservation	→	rezervasyon	customer	→	müşteri	service	→	servis, hizmet
officer	→	memur	incident	→	olay	burglar	→	ev hırsızı
balcony	→	balkon	neighbour	→	komşu	conversation	→	konuşma
fire	→	yangın	invitation	→	davet	accident	→	kaza
joke	→	şaka	ambulance	→	ambulans	technology	→	teknoloji
version	→	sürüm	pros	→	olumlu yanlar	cons	→	olumsuz yanlar
concentration	→	konsantrasyon	risk	→	risk	security	→	güvenlik
addiction	→	bağımlılık	information	→	bilgi	issue	→	konu, problem
authority	→	yetkili	message	→	mesaj	festival	→	festival
project	→	proje	note	→	not	wife	→	eş (kadın)
office	→	ofis	faculty	→	fakülte	culture	→	kültür
suggestion	→	öneri	contact	→	irtibat	emergency	→	acil
misunderstanding	→	yanlış anlaşılma						
smartphone	→	akıllı telefon						
extension	→	paralel hat, dahili						

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. If you have a technical problem, you have to call the customer **order** / **service** to fix it.
2. You can leave a **message** / **suggestion**. He's busy right now. He'll get back to you later.
3. There is a/an **extension** / **misunderstanding**. Let me tell you the whole story again.
4. I called you because I'd like to make a **reservation** / **note** for two nights, please.
5. Let's stop this **smartphone** / **conversation**, please. You don't understand me.

2

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

1. nolotechgy
technology
2. taccont
contact
3. cideacnt
accident
4. versacontion
conversation
5. horiautty
authority
6. pointmapent
appointment
7. refi
fire

3

Complete the sentences with the words below.

line

balcony

technology

headmaster

tickets

contact

appointment

ambulance

1. I called an ambulance because there was an accident.
2. Jane needs to go to her son's school because she has an appointment with the headmaster.
3. Jessica can't join us tomorrow afternoon because she has an important appointment.
4. I'm afraid I can't connect you because the line is engaged.
5. Fred wants to buy two tickets for the football match.
6. I don't have Jack's contact number.
7. My house has a very big balcony.
8. Teresa is interested in the latest technology.

4

Match the words to the definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. inviter | <u>5</u> a. positive sides of something. |
| 2. line | <u>8</u> b. a piece of land next to your house where you grow plants |
| 3. officer | <u>4</u> c. a part of your house outside |
| 4. balcony | <u>10</u> d. negative sides of something |
| 5. pros | <u>6</u> e. a command or instruction |
| 6. order | <u>3</u> f. a person who works under the authority of a government |
| 7. neighbour | <u>2</u> g. a connection to a phone system |
| 8. garden | <u>7</u> h. a person who lives very close to you |
| 9. headmaster | <u>1</u> i. someone who invites someone else to something / somewhere |
| 10. cons | <u>9</u> j. a male headteacher |

VOCABULARY 3

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

faculty of medicine	→	tıp fakültesi	generous person	→	cömert kişi
mobile phone	→	cep telefonu	bad line	→	kötü şebeke
doctor appointment	→	doktor randevusu	shopping list	→	alışveriş listesi
customer service	→	müşteri hizmetleri	local authority	→	yerel yönetim
latest version	→	en son sürüm	call centre	→	çağrı merkezi
security risk	→	güvenlik riski	health service	→	sağlık hizmeti
homeless people	→	evsiz insanlar	kite festival	→	uçurtma festivali
school project	→	okul projesi	phone conversation	→	telefon konuşması
restaurant reservation	→	restoran rezervasyonu	internet connection	→	internet bağlantısı

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. latest | 2_ a. people |
| 2. homeless | 7_ b. list |
| 3. call | 4 / 6_ c. service |
| 4. health | 5_ d. line |
| 5. bad | 4 / 6_ e. service |
| 6. customer | 1_ f. version |
| 7. shopping | 8_ g. project |
| 8. school | 3_ h. centre |



2

Put the sentences into the correct order.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. calling / service / am / I / the / customer. | 1. <u>I'm calling the customer service</u> . |
| 2. he / conversation / making / phone / is / a. | 2. <u>He is making a phone conversation</u> . |
| 3. have / do / connection / Internet / you / an? | 3. <u>Do you have an Internet connection?</u> |
| 4. is / line / it / a / bad. | 4. <u>It is a bad line</u> . |
| 5. Mahsun / a / appointment / doctor / 5 p.m. / at / has. | 5. <u>Mahsun has a doctor appointment at 5 p.m.</u> |

VOCABULARY 4

VERBS

hear	duymak	repeat	tekrarlamak
speak	konuşmak	study	çalışmak (ders)
call	aramak (telefon)	wonder	merak etmek
connect	bağlanmak (iletişim)	contact	temas kurmak
invite	davet etmek	ring	çalmak (telefon)
receive	almak	leave	bırakmak, ayrılmak
join	katılmak	water	sulamak
need	ihtiyaç duymak	try	denemek
answer	cevaplamak	notice	farketmek
seem	görünmek	contact	iletişim kurmak
reserve	ayırtmak (yer vb)	provide	sağlamak
change	değiştirmek	carry	taşımak
disturb	rahatsız etmek	decide	karar vermek
solve	çözmek	express	açıklamak
press	basmak (tuş)	book	ayırtmak (yer vb)
introduce	tanıtmak	accept	kabul etmek
approve	onaylamak	evolve	evrilmek

EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the verbs. Then complete the sentences.

- Jack doesn't know how to **solve** (lvsoe) his problem.
- I'm sorry, but I can't **approve** (proapve) your mistakes.
- Lora finds it difficult to **express** (presexs) her feelings and thoughts.
- You need to **press** (esprs) this button for the next step.
- Don't talk on the phone loudly! You shouldn't **disturb** (tudisrb) others.
- Could you **connect** (neccont) me to Terry Web's office, please?
- You can **leave** (avlee) a message over the phone.
- I want to **invite** (viinte) Rose to the basketball match.

2

Complete the sentences with the verbs below.

○ solve

○ decide

○ book

○ introduce

○ provide

○ contact

○ repeat

○ answer

1. Could you **repeat**? I can't hear you well.
2. I'd like to **introduce** my brother to you.
3. I think local authorities should **provide** food and shelter for poor people.
4. You need to **contact** Gary Miller immediately. He's waiting for your phone call.
5. Can you calm down and **answer** my questions?
6. Olga wants to **book** a room at Green Way Hotel for her summer holiday.
7. Both mobile phones are great. Which one should I buy? I can't **decide**.
8. If you help me, I can **solve** my problems earlier.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

3

Find and circle the 20 verbs in the word-search puzzle.

w	r	e	v	o	l	v	e	q	j	k	w	o	n	d	e	r
z	x	x	v	u	i	i	l	k	n	j	u	g	t	y	u	j
r	c	h	e	a	r	w	s	p	e	a	k	x	j	o	i	n
e	e	t	r	r	y	u	i	i	k	j	u	b	n	c	d	e
c	q	c	a	a	l	l	s	s	e	e	m	z	n	e	e	d
e	x	c	v	b	g	h	i	q	e	r	r	e	t	q	w	s
i	d	q	r	e	s	e	r	v	e	a	s	t	u	d	y	z
v	c	x	v	b	x	c	v	a	z	n	q	w	w	i	i	f
e	w	r	i	n	g	x	w	a	t	e	r	a	b	o	o	k
a	z	x	d	f	r	a	w	q	q	x	c	v	k	o	q	q
p	r	o	v	i	d	e	s	f	t	r	y	u	h	j	k	c
y	x	c	v	b	n	j	u	o	o	p	p	i	l	k	j	a
w	s	i	n	t	r	o	d	u	c	e	x	c	e	r	q	r
q	z	s	a	a	d	f	u	i	b	n	g	t	y	u	d	r
c	h	a	n	g	e	q	w	w	n	o	t	i	c	e	w	y

VOCABULARY 5

VERB PHRASES

hang on	→	beklemek, hatta kalmak	hold on	→	hatta beklemek
get back	→	dönüş yapmak(aramak)	put someone through	→	birini bağlamak
hang up	→	telefonu kapatmak	hold on a minute	→	bir dakika beklemek
leave a message	→	mesaj bırakmak	call back	→	geri aramak
go out	→	dışarıya çıkmak	meet up	→	buluşmak
take care	→	dikkat etmek, iyi bakmak	dial a number	→	numara çevirmek
break into	→	zorla girmek (ev, bina vb)	calm down	→	sakinleşmek
get in touch	→	iletişime geçmek	keep in touch	→	irtibatta kalmak
get information	→	bilgi almak	get help	→	yardım almak
ask for	→	rica etmek	go on	→	devam etmek

EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the verb phrases.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|------------|--------------|----------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. get | <u>3</u> | a. on | 6. put | <u>6</u> | f. someone through |
| 2. dial | <u>3/5</u> | b. up | 7. take | <u>4</u> | g. for |
| 3. hang | <u>9</u> | c. in touch | 8. leave | <u>2</u> | h. a number |
| 4. ask | <u>8</u> | d. a message | 9. keep | <u>1</u> | i. back |
| 5. meet | <u>7</u> | e. care | | | |

2

Complete the sentences with the verb phrases below.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> break into | <input type="radio"/> go out |
| <input type="radio"/> ask for | <input type="radio"/> get in touch |
| <input type="radio"/> go on | <input type="radio"/> calm down |
| <input type="radio"/> leave a message | <input type="radio"/> call back |

- leave a message**
- Would you like to _____? He will call you back when he gets your message.
 - Burglars usually **break into** houses at night.
 - The number is correct. **Go on** dialling the number.
 - I'm too busy now. I'll **call back** in an hour.
 - Calm down**, please! She will call you back soon.
 - You can always **ask for** my help.
 - We don't usually **go out** after seven in the evening.
 - I need to **get in touch** with Fred as soon as possible.

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-12: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. **Peggy** : The doorbell is ringing. Could you _____ a second? I need to open the door.

Iris : Sure. No problem.

- A) leave a message B) connect
C) dial the number **D) hang on**

2. **Darren** : Hello! This is Darren speaking. Is Clara there?

Tina : No, she isn't. She has gone out. Can I take a message?

Darren : No, thanks. I'll _____ later.

- A) call back** B) pick up the phone
C) put you through D) calm down

3. I'm trying to contact my sister, but the line is _____.

- A) generous B) available
C) harmful **D) engaged**

4. I don't talk on my mobile phone in public places because I don't want to _____ anybody.

- A) disturb** B) provide
C) reserve D) express

5. **Amy** : I can't hear you well, Josh. It's a / an _____. Can you speak louder?

Josh : Sure. Is that better?

- A) road accident B) concentration
C) bad line D) emergency number

6. I'm afraid he isn't _____ at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?

- A) homeless B) engaged
C) available D) embarrassed

7. **Maria** : I think it's a bad line. I can't hear you well. Could you _____?

Liz : Sure. Shall we meet at half past one in front of the cinema.

- A) repeat** B) hang up
C) approve D) evolve

8. **Terry** : How do you usually _____ with your friends?

Katrina : I talk to them on the phone every day.

- A) dial a number **B) keep in touch**
C) hang up D) call back

9. I think smartphones are _____ because they have lots of security risks.

- A) possible B) local
C) harmful D) useful

10. **Tracy** : How did you _____ the incident yesterday? Can you tell us?

Samet : I saw the accident when I was at the corner of the market. I called you immediately.

- A) notice** B) seem
C) invite D) contact

11. If you have a problem with your Internet connection, you must call the _____.

- A) headmaster
B) local authority
C) ambulance
D) customer service

12.



There are lots of homeless people in my neighbourhood. I think the _____ should provide shelter for them.

Patrick

- A) reservation
- B) extension
- C) local authority
- D) faculty of medicine

13.

I. surprised



II. embarrassed



III. scared



IV. angry



Which pair is **WRONG**?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

14. There was a burglary in my neighbourhood last night.

Which of the following shows the incident above?

A)



B)



C)



D)



15.

1. get

2. hold

3. ask

4. keep

a. for

b. in touch

c. back

d. on a minute

Choose the correct option to match the halves of the phrases.

- A) 1 - b / 2 - d / 3 - c / 4 - a
- B) 1 - b / 2 - a / 3 - c / 4 - d
- C) 1 - c / 2 - d / 3 - a / 4 - b
- D) 1 - d / 2 - c / 3 - b / 4 - a

16.

Feelings

- angry
- surprised
- bored
- _____

Which option is suitable to add to the list?

- A) engaged B) neighbour
- C) memo D) embarrassed

17.

A: How can I help you?

B: I'd like to reserve a table for Friday evening.

A: All right. I will reserve the best table for you.

B: Thanks. Have a nice day.

What is the conversation for?

- A) Misunderstanding B) Shopping list
- C) Restaurant reservation D) An accident

18.

Teresa : I have lots of clothes. I want to share some of them with the people in need in my town. I don't know where to call.

Where should Teresa call?

- A) Municipality call center B) Health service
- C) Emergency number D) Police station

19.



Which option is related to the picture above?

- A) Call centre B) Burglary
- C) Appointment D) Accident

20.

I think smartphones are useful in many ways. For example, they are too expensive to buy. They have some security risks. Smartphone addiction is another important problem.

Which underlined word is **WRONG** in the text?

- A) useful B) expensive
- C) security D) addiction

NARTEST

NARTEST

GRAMMAR 1

FOLLOWING PHONE CONVERSATIONS

"Can / Could / May"

• We use 'Can / Could / May' for polite requests and permission.



Examples

1. May I speak to Mr Green, please?
2. Could I use your mobile phone for a minute?
3. Could I ask who is calling?
4. Can you spell your last name?
5. How may I help you?
6. Could you tell him to call me back?
7. Can I ask you a question?
8. Can I take your phone number?
9. May I leave now?
10. May I confirm my reservation?



'Would like'

• We use 'would like' for making polite offers and requests.



Examples

1. **A:** Would Sarah like to join us?
B: No, she wouldn't.
2. **A:** Would you like to leave a message?
B: Yes, I would.
3. **A:** Would he like to call me on my mobile phone?
B: Yes, sure.
4. **A:** When would you like to meet Jack?
B: Tomorrow at half past two.
5. **A:** Would you like him to call you back?
B: Yes, please. Thanks.





ATTENTION!

- We can use different phrases to introduce ourselves over the phone.

Examples:

1. Hello, this is Ray Moss.
2. Hello, this is Ray Moss from BTG Company.
3. Kate speaking.
4. It's Jane calling.
5. This is Kevin Miller calling.

- Study the following phrases.

1. **A:** May I speak to Hannah Smith?
B: I'm afraid she isn't available at the moment. Can I take a message?
2. **A:** Hi, Clara. I can't go to the cinema with you because I'm ill.
B: I'm sorry to hear that. Get well soon.



EXERCISES

Put the sentences into the correct order.

1. I / may / Carl / speak / to?
May I speak to Carl _____ ?
2. could / me / to / put / through / boss / the / you?
Could you put me through the boss _____ ?
3. is / it / Samantha / calling / hello.
Hello, it is Samantha calling _____ .
4. speaking / is / Emrullah / good / evening / it.
Good evening, it is Emrullah speaking _____ .
5. home / isn't / at / Luna / I'm / afraid / now.
I'm afraid Luna isn't at home now _____ .
6. good / is / morning / this / Mathieu / calling.
Good morning, this is Mathieu calling _____ .
7. tell / can / you / him / me / call / to?
Can you tell him to call me _____ ?
8. talk / like / to / would / Melih / you / to?
Would you like to talk to Melih _____ ?

GRAMMAR 2

STATING DECISIONS TAKEN AT THE TIME OF SPEAKING

- While speaking to someone, we take some decisions. We use "will" for snap / quick decisions.

WILL

Will I / You / He / She / It / We / They I / You / He / She / It / We / They	I / you / he / she / it / we / they will will not / won't	meet tomorrow? meet tomorrow. meet tomorrow.
--	---	--

EXERCISE

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets. Use the correct forms of "will".

1. I'm too tired. I won't go (go) to the match with Sid.
2. **Ray** : I need to contact Helen, but I don't have her number.
Clara : No problem. I will tell (tell) her to call you.
3. **A:** May I speak to Jessica Reeds?
B: Sure. I will put (put) you through.
4. Yuka won't join (join) us because she needs to finish her project.
5. **A:** Sarah is waiting for your phone call.
B: Okay. I will phone (phone) her as soon as I finish my task.
6. **A:** Jack should contact his father, but he doesn't have a mobile phone.
B: No worries. I will give (give) mine to him.
7. **A:** May I speak to the manager?
B: Hold on a moment. I will check (check) for you.
8. Paul wants to reserve a room at a hotel, but he isn't sure. He will think (think) about it.
9. **A:** Look! There is a burglar outside.
B: Oh! I will call (call) the police.
10. **A:** Shall we have a party?
B: Great idea. I will text (text) Jane and Kate to join us.

GRAMMAR TEST

1-5: For these questions, fill in the gaps according to the dialogue below.

- Ross** : Hello! (1) _____ I speak to Mrs. White, please?
- Chris** : I'm afraid she isn't available right now. Can I (2) _____ who is calling?
- Ross** : I'm Ross Sky from KYT Company. I need to speak to her about a product.
- Chris** : Would you like (3) _____ leave a message for her?
- Ross** : Sure. Could you (4) _____ her to reply my email as soon as she can?
- Chris** : Of course. I (5) _____ pass your message.

1.

- A) Does B) Is
 C) May D) Would

2.

- A) ask B) asking
 C) to ask D) asks

3.

- A) with B) is
 C) do D) to

4.

- A) telling B) tells
 C) tell D) to tell

5.

- A) would like B) will
 C) may D) could

6. is / Tim / Hello / speaking / this.

Which of the following is the correct order of the sentence above?

- A) Hello, this is speaking Tim.
 B) Hello Tim, this is speaking.
 C) Hello, this is Tim speaking.
 D) Hello, this speaking Tim is.

7. **Which of the following sentences includes a snap decision?**

- A) Hi! It is Barbara speaking.
 B) Is Lisa there?
 C) Alright. I will get back to him later.
 D) Could I speak to your sister?

8. **Andrew** : _____ I speak to Carla Brown, please?

Janet : Sure, I'll put you through.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) May B) Could
 C) Would like D) Can

9. I. I'd like to leave a message for Jack Reeds, please.

II. May I to speak Mr. Quinn, please?

III. I'll call her in an hour.

IV. Could you tell your name?

Which sentence is grammatically WRONG?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

10. I. I'll to meet you at half past four.

II. She would like to join you.

III. May I talking to your manager?

IV. Could I reserves a room for next Friday?

Which sentence is grammatically CORRECT?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

11. that, / repeat / please / you / could?

Which of the following is the correct order of the sentence above?

- A) Could repeat you, please that?
 B) Could you repeat that, please?
 C) You could that repeat, please?
 D) Could please you that, repeat?

12. I. May I talk to the manager, please?
 II. Sure, I'll pass your message.
 III. Would you like to go to the cinema with me?
 IV. Can I answer your question?
- Choose the correct option for the sentences above.**
- A) I. snap decision – II. request – III. permission – IV. offer
 B) I. offer – II. request – III. permission – IV. snap decision
 C) I. request – II. snap decision – III. offer – IV. permission
 D) I. permission – II. offer – III. snap decision – IV. request

13. **William** : Hello! William speaking. May I speak to Dr Miller, please?
- Pauline** : I'm afraid he's not available right now. Would you like to leave a message?
- William** : Sure. Can you telling him to call me back, please?

Which underlined word / phrase IS NOT grammatically correct?

- A) May
 B) I'm afraid
 C) to leave
 D) telling

14-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

14. **Fred** : Can you tell Jack _____ back?
Lily : Sure.
- A) calling
 B) call
 C) calls
 D) to call
15. **Emin** : Look, Sidar! I have two tickets for the basketball match tomorrow. Would you like to join me?
Sidar : Great idea. I _____ definitely be there. Thanks.
- A) may
 B) will
 C) don't
 D) won't

16. **Sierra** : _____ I speak to Laura?
Manue : Hold on a minute please. I'll get her.
- A) Will
 C) Could
 B) Do
 D) Is
17. **Hans** : Can I speak to the headmaster?
Peter : He's out. _____ you like to leave a message?
- A) May
 C) Could
 B) Can
 D) Would
18. **Mine** : Mine _____. Is Judy there?
Mark : No, she has gone out.
- A) speaking
 C) to speaking
 B) to speak
 D) speaks
19. **Mauro** : _____ Mauro. I'd like to talk to Vicky.
Carlos : Hi Mauro! I'm Carlos. Hold on a minute.
- A) Could
 C) Does
 B) May
 D) This is
20. **Dani** : He isn't at home now. _____ leave a message?
Serena : Can you tell him to call me back as soon as possible?
- A) Will
 B) Can
 C) Do you want
 D) Would you like to

READING

_____?

What do you think about smartphones? Are they useful or harmful? Smartphones are everywhere because they are very popular communication tools in the world. People had landline phones to keep in touch in the past. Then mobile phones were born with more applications and features. The history of mobile phones goes back to 1908. They evolved through the years, but the world had the first portable mobile phone in 1983. The smartphone is the latest version of the mobile phone. Today, millions of people use smartphones for lots of different reasons. However, these smart tools have pros and cons at the same time.



First, it's fast and easy to keep in touch through a smartphone. Smartphones are great to make emergency phone calls. They are easy to carry. On the other hand, smartphones are too expensive to buy, and there are some security risks for users. Addiction is another important issue about smartphones.

1. Choose the best title for the text.

- A) Positive Sides of Smartphones
- B) Smartphones in Our World
- C) Teenagers and Smartphones
- D) Mobile Phones in Today's World

2. Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

- A) How did people communicate in the past?
- B) What happened in 1983?
- C) What are some of the good points of smartphones?
- D) How do people become addicted to smartphones?

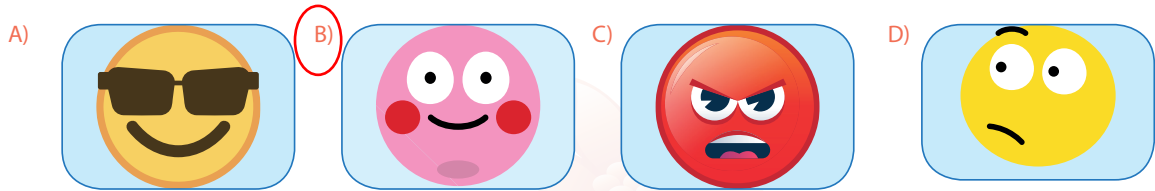
3. We understand from the text that _____.

Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.

- A) the mobile phone is the latest version of the smartphone
- B) smartphones are completely harmful
- C) smartphones aren't cheap tools
- D) smartphones don't have any cons

1. **Whitney** : Hello, Grace! What's up?
Jennifer : Hi, Whitney. It's Jennifer.
Whitney : Oh, Jennifer! Is that you? I'm so sorry. I feel embarrassed.
Jennifer : Don't feel bad, please. That's okay.

Which emoji shows Whitney's feeling in the phone conversation?



2.



- Mete** : Hello! Mete speaking. Is Osman there? Can I speak to him?
Ahmet : Sure. Hang on a minute please. I'll get him.
Mete : Okay, thanks.
Ahmet : Oh! I'm sorry. He has gone out.
Mete : That's not a problem. Can you tell him to call me back?
Ahmet : Of course. I'll pass your message on to him as soon as he comes back.
Mete : Thanks. Have a nice day.

Which of the following is FALSE about the dialogue above?

- A) Mete is the caller of the phone call.
 B) Osman is available, but he doesn't want to talk to Mete.
 C) Mete leaves a message over the phone.
 D) Mete will call Osman back later.

3.



Receptionist : Sky Corner Hotel. Carla speaking. _____?

Andrew : Hello! I'd like to reserve a room for two nights, please.

Receptionist : Sure. Would you like a double or a single room?

Andrew : Single, please. I want the room between 8th and 9th August.

Receptionist : Okay. _____? I'll check for you.

(30 seconds later)

Receptionist : We have a room available for you. _____?

Andrew : Andrew Moss.

Receptionist : Thanks, Mr Moss. The total price is £600.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT the receptionist ask Andrew?

- A) How do you spell your name and surname
- B) How may I help you
- C) Could you hold the line, please
- D) Can I take your full name

4. **Officer** : Hello! How may I help you?

Mike : Oh, hello! There is someone outside!

Officer : Can you calm down and tell me what the problem is?

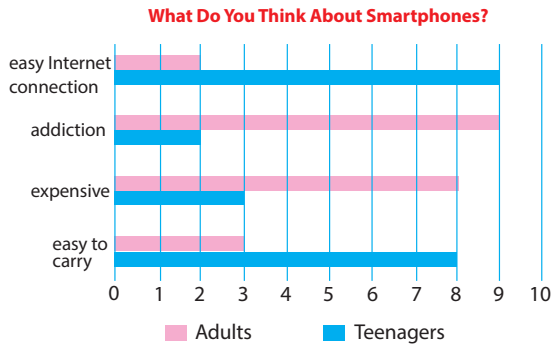
Mike : I mean someone is breaking into my neighbour's house. I need your help immediately.

Officer : Sure. Can you give me your full name and address, please?

What is the telephone conversation about?

- A) It's about a reservation.
- B) It's about a road accident.
- C) It's about a burglary.
- D) It's about social media.

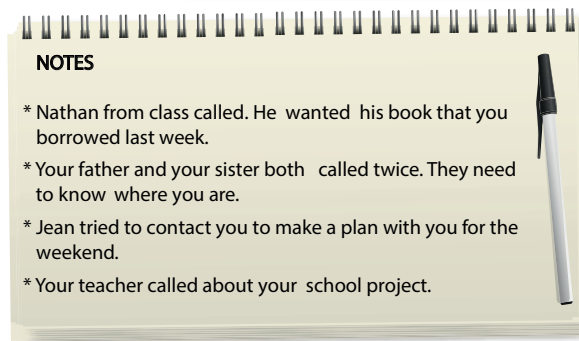
5.



Most adults _____.

Choose the best option to complete the sentence.

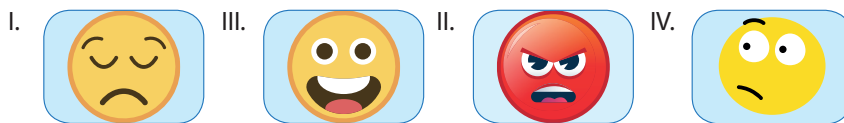
- A) think that the smartphone is the best device to connect to the Internet
 - B) think that smartphones are useful and cheap devices
 - C) think that smartphone addiction is an important issue
 - D) don't think that smartphones have any harmful effects
6. Ricardo and Luis are roommates. They are university students. These are Ricardo's notes for Luis.



Luis reads the notes and calls them back. Which of the following statements IS NOT correct according to the information above?

- A) Hello Nathan! I'm so sorry about the book. I will give it back as soon as possible.
- B) Hello, Dad! I was out with some friends. I'm so sorry for making you worried about me.
- C) Hello, Jean! I won't have a barbecue with you this weekend.
- D) Hello, Mr Reeds. I'll finish the project by next Friday.

7.



Alex : Hi, Judy! How are you?

Judy : Not bad. I'm at home, and there is nothing interesting to do.

Alex : Oh, really! We can have a fun activity together. Let's go to the basketball match in the city centre!

Judy : Sure. That's a good idea.

Which emoji shows Judy's feeling in the conversation?

- A) I
- B) II
- C) III
- D) IV

8. Here is the list of phone calls that Mr. Robertson should make today.

●	Doctor appointment
●	Restaurant Reservation
●	Customer Service
●	Swimming Lesson

Which of the following IS NOT correct according to the list?

- A) Hi! Is Dr. Watson available tomorrow? I need to consult him.
- B) Hello! Can I book a table for two, please?
- C) Hello! Do you have any social media accounts?**
- D) Good morning. I have a problem with my Internet connection. Can you help me?

9.

Laura: Good afternoon! Can I speak to Rick please?

Glen: Good afternoon! Who is calling?

Laura: Laura speaking.

Glen: _____ I'll get him.

Which of the following DOES NOT complete the conversation?

- A) Hang on a moment, please.
- B) Hold the line, please.
- C) Can you hold on a minute, please?
- D) Could you speak louder, please?**

10.

Linda: I don't think they have any pros. They have lots of negative effects on our lives.

Nick: They are useful in many ways. I always follow the latest versions.

Nancy: I never lose my concentration when I have my smartphone near me. It's a great communication tool for me.

Kevin: In my opinion, smartphones are great devices for quick communication.

What do you think about smartphones?

Who thinks smartphones are harmful?

- A) Linda**
- B) Nick
- C) Nancy
- D) Kevin

THE INTERNET

*The Internet is just another experiment showing us more sides of us.
-Frank Ocean*



We are going to learn :

- 📌 accepting and refusing
- 📌 making excuses

UNIT 5

UNIT 5

THE INTERNET

Common Expressions



What do you use the Internet for?
What do you think about the Internet?
How do you connect to the Internet?
Would you like to join our Whatsapp group?
How often do you go online?
What do you mean?
Do you mean the Internet connection?
Why don't you get help from the service?
Thanks for asking, but I'm afraid I can't.
That's very kind of you, but I'm busy.
I use the Internet for reading e-books.
Be careful with what you share.
Why don't we chat online at 4 o'clock?
I want to tell you something important.
It isn't working properly.
That sounds great.
No, thanks. I am really busy.
Obey the Internet safety rules.
Are you an Internet addict?
Do you follow any bloggers?
Avoid using dangerous sites.
Having online friends is dangerous.
Use safe websites.

İnterneti ne için kullanıyorsun?
İnternet hakkında ne düşünüyorsun?
İnternete nasıl bağlanıyorsun?
Whatsapp grubumuza katılmak ister misin?
Ne sıklıkla çevrimiçi olursun /internete girersin?
Ne demek istiyorsun?
İnternet bağlantısını mı kastediyorsun?
Neden servisten yardım almıyorsun?
Sorduğün için teşekkürler ama korkarım yapamam.
Çok kibarsın ama meşgulüm.
Ben interneti e-kitap okumak için kullanırım.
Ne paylaştığına dikkat et.
Neden saat 4'te internetten sohbet etmiyoruz?
Sana önemli birşey söylemek istiyorum.
Düzgün çalışmıyor.
Kulağa hoş geliyor.
Hayır teşekkürler. Gerçekten meşgulüm.
İnternet güvenlik kurallarına uy.
Sen internet bağımlısı mısın?
Hiç blog yazarı takip ediyor musun?
Tehlikeli siteler kullanmaktan sakın.
İnternetten arkadaş edinmek tehlikelidir.
Güvenli siteler kullan.

VOCABULARY 1

ADJECTIVES

social	→	sosyal	recent	→	yeni, en son
different	→	farklı	necessary	→	gerekli
addicted	→	bağımlı	functional	→	pratik, kullanışlı
online	→	çevrimiçi	offline	→	çevrimdışı
busy	→	meşgul	foreign	→	yabancı
broken	→	bozuk, kırık	important	→	önemli
personal	→	kişisel	careful	→	dikkatli
secret	→	gizli	flat	→	düz
multiplayer	→	çok oyunculu	homeless	→	evsiz
free	→	boş, özgür	modern	→	modern, çağdaş
dangerous	→	tehlikeli	ironic	→	ironik
young	→	genç	safe	→	güvenli
unknown	→	bilinmeyen / tanıdık olmayan	kind	→	nazik, kibar

EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

1. You must avoid dangerous (gerodanus) sites on the Internet.
2. I always do online shopping from this website. Don't worry, it is safe (aefs).
3. Many young (gynou) people use social networking sites in the world.
4. If you spend too much time on the Internet, that means you're addicted (dadedtci).
5. There are plenty of fake identities on social media, so you should be careful (lcuarfe).
6. In my opinion, laptops are so functional (lfuannocit).
7. I think my Internet is broken (nbreak). I should call the service.
8. My brother is going to join an online foreign (nfigroe) language course.

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. Some **recent** / **busy** surveys show that Instagram is more popular than Facebook.
2. You shouldn't share your **flat** / **personal** information with anybody on the Internet.
3. Eric can't reply my message because he is **offline** / **free**.
4. I use the Internet for **modern** / **necessary** things like homework, research and online courses.
5. Everyone uses the Internet for **different** / **safe** reasons.
6. You should refuse **unknown** / **important** people's friend requests.
7. I feel very bad about **homeless** / **multiplayer** people. They need a place to live in.
8. Judy has got over one hundred **ironic** / **online** friends on Facebook.

3

Find and circle the 11 words in the word-search puzzle.

C	U	Y	M	C	C	B	I	D	F	P	C	R	E	W	M
I	I	R	O	N	I	C	W	H	U	A	N	E	B	L	J
Z	A	W	B	Q	U	W	C	O	N	O	K	T	Z	J	E
T	B	B	M	P	Z	A	X	M	C	G	L	V	M	G	M
G	E	H	V	L	J	I	U	E	T	W	P	N	O	K	Q
M	S	O	C	I	A	L	C	L	I	P	E	A	D	J	P
S	F	O	A	L	D	S	A	E	O	Q	R	Z	E	X	U
I	O	I	D	X	G	M	R	S	N	N	S	W	R	O	H
D	R	B	D	A	W	Z	E	S	A	N	O	H	N	C	U
D	E	U	I	W	A	Q	F	I	L	H	N	Q	J	E	K
A	I	S	C	Z	A	P	U	O	U	C	A	Y	X	W	E
R	G	Y	T	G	W	W	L	M	E	E	L	Q	P	Y	B
O	N	H	E	E	N	M	J	F	V	G	V	B	A	K	G
C	M	W	D	Y	D	M	I	M	P	O	R	T	A	N	T

VOCABULARY 2

NOUNS

account	hesap	attachment	ek	web	internet ağı
browser	tarayıcı	comment	yorum	connection	bağlantı
site	site	research	araştırma	usage	kullanım
aim	amaç, hedef	post	gönderi	notification	bildirim
request	istek, rica	message	mesaj	subscriber	abone
science	bilim	technology	teknoloji	blog	web günlüğü
article	makale	e-book	e-kitap	e-mail	e-posta
addict	bağımlı	news	haber	equipment	donanım
recipe	yemek tarifi	cure	tedavi	series	dizi
language	dil	game	oyun	group	grup
help	yardım	rule	kural	photo	fotoğraf
screen	ekran	information	bilgi	smartphone	akıllı telefon
laptop	dizüstü bilgisayar	opinion	görüş	password	şifre
website	internet sitesi	writing	yazı	wall	duvar
letter	harf	mouse	fare	keyboard	klavye
word	kelime	surface	yüzey	picture	resim
pollution	kirlilik	button	tuş	gender	cinsiyet
gardening	bahçecilik	plane	uçak	engineer	mühendis
symbol	sembol	journalist	gazeteci	relationship	ilişki
fear	korku	readership	okurlar	software	yazılım
webcam	internet kamerası	punctuation	noktalama	statement	ifade
virus	virüs	secret	sır	excuse	bahane
encyclopaedia	ansiklopedi	control	kontrol	file	dosya
address	adres, link	member	üye	adult	yetişkin
course	ders	fashion	moda	identity	kimlik
sign	işaret	communication	iletişim		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Order the letters to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. wsbroer | <u>browser</u> | 9. ineenger | <u>engineer</u> |
| 2. uesreqt | <u>request</u> | 10. twasofre | <u>software</u> |
| 3. bosyml | <u>symbol</u> | 11. eescrn | <u>screen</u> |
| 4. achmattent | <u>attachment</u> | 12. teletr | <u>letter</u> |
| 5. mecomnt | <u>comment</u> | 13. usvir | <u>virus</u> |
| 6. hnototecgy | <u>technology</u> | 14. dicadt | <u>addict</u> |
| 7. ormainftion | <u>information</u> | 15. degenr | <u>gender</u> |
| 8. dersreahip | <u>readership</u> | 16. mbemer | <u>member</u> |

2

Write the words under the pictures.

website

smartphone

password

webcam

keyboard

notification

mouse

screen

1.



keyboard

2.



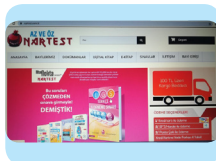
webcam

3.



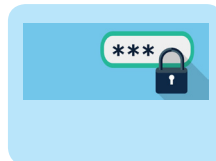
notification

4.



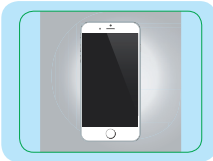
website

5.



password

6.



smartphone

7.



mouse

8.



screen

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- I don't have a Twitter **browser** / **account**. I don't follow social media.
- My mother uses the Internet for **gardening** / **recipes**. She's interested in traditional dishes.
- Judy loves reading **fashion** / **fear** blogs. She always wears trendy clothes.
- Fred always checks his **e-mails** / **e-books**. He replies all of them as soon as possible.
- Dora thinks **viruses** / **encyclopaedias** are very useful for her school projects.
- They usually write blogs about **pollution** / **punctuation** and homeless people.
- I think Internet is a great way of global **communication** / **equipment**.
- I use my laptop for reading the **news** / **fear**.

VOCABULARY 3

VERBS

confirm	onaylamak	delete	silmek
reply	cevaplamak	upload	yüklemek
use	kullanmak	share	paylaşmak
send	göndermek	click	tıklamak
browse	göz atmak	practise	pratik yapmak
watch	izlemek	chat	sohbet etmek
search	arama yapmak	avoid	kaçınmak
post	gönderi paylaşmak	comment	yorum yapmak
see	görmek	fill	doldurmak
follow	takip etmek	begin	başlamak
create	oluşturmak	catch	yakalamak
allow	izin vermek	interact	etkileşmek
join	katılmak	accept	kabul etmek
spend	harcamak	mean	demek istemek
download	indirmek	show	göstermek
vary	değişiklik göstermek	check	kontrol etmek
connect	bağlanmak	surf	gezinmek (internette)
tell	anlatmak	refuse	reddetmek
obey	uymak	register	kaydolmak
sound	gibi gelmek	modify	değişmek, değiştirmek
develop	geliştirmek	prefer	tercih etmek
increase	yükselmek, yükseltmek		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct verb in each sentence.

1. My father **watches** / **refuses** movies on the Internet on Saturdays.
2. I use my laptop to **connect** / **check** to the Internet.
3. My brother uses the Internet for **following** / **chatting** foreign series.
4. I usually **comment** / **allow** on my friends' photos on Facebook.
5. **Sound** / **Click** on the sign-up button and fill in the personal information boxes to watch my videos.
6. **Avoid** / **Develop** sharing your personal information with strangers.
7. I always **search** / **obey** for new information on the Internet.
8. If a stranger **sends** / **surfs** a friend request on social media, I never accept it.

2

Complete the sentences with the verbs below.

prefer

modify

register

increase

vary

browse

allow

connect

1. This site doesn't **allow** me to download music.
2. Do you **prefer** using the Internet for your school projects and research?
3. I don't know how to **modify** this page. I want to make it look different.
4. Our school projects **vary** from month to month.
5. I usually go online and **browse** science related websites.
6. The subscribers of this website **increase** every month. It's very popular.
7. Yuka uses her smartphone to **connect** to the Internet.
8. If you want to use this website, you must **register** first.

3

Find and circle the 12 words in the word-search puzzle.

D	L	Z	Q	G	N	M	U	L	F	T	W	E	O	Q	M	B
T	X	L	L	E	W	P	I	S	V	S	E	A	R	C	H	R
O	C	R	E	A	T	E	D	W	K	B	H	F	C	O	C	O
O	N	Q	C	O	M	M	E	N	T	T	G	L	X	Q	H	W
F	X	E	U	Y	E	J	B	Q	W	Q	L	W	H	I	Y	S
W	D	E	V	E	L	O	P	U	X	Y	P	P	P	Q	Q	E
Z	J	M	V	W	O	K	C	X	P	I	U	U	R	F	Z	U
D	O	W	N	L	O	A	D	I	N	T	E	R	A	C	T	V
E	U	A	U	A	P	Y	Y	U	Q	Z	H	C	H	E	C	K
W	I	D	G	C	S	V	E	H	X	Z	C	E	H	D	P	N
S	F	M	J	C	P	Q	B	M	R	E	F	U	S	E	D	G
N	R	J	Y	E	E	R	E	G	I	S	T	E	R	B	R	N
Y	M	U	R	P	N	M	H	T	J	Y	X	Z	U	U	T	M
H	N	Y	I	T	D	I	V	S	P	T	B	S	R	T	D	V

VOCABULARY 4



NOUN/ADJECTIVE PHRASES

social networking site	→ sosyal paylaşım sitesi	science blog	→ bilim blogu
technology blog	→ teknoloji blogu	online news	→ internet haberleri
bank account	→ banka hesabı	health cure	→ tedavi, kür
free time	→ boş zaman	foreign series	→ yabancı dizi
WhatsApp group	→ WhatsApp grubu	Internet connection	→ internet bağlantısı
connection sign	→ bağlantı işareti	safety rules	→ güvenlik kuralları
personal information	→ kişisel bilgi	computer program	→ bilgisayar programı
word combination	→ kelime kombinasyonu	flat surface	→ düz yüzey
homeless people	→ evsiz insanlar	street animals	→ sokak hayvanları
video blog	→ video blogu	vlog address	→ vlog adresi
computer lab	→ bilgisayar laboratuvarı	multiplayer game	→ çok kişili oyunu
friend request	→ arkadaşlık isteği	online games	→ internet oyunu
old files	→ eski dosyalar	safe website	→ güvenli internet sitesi
family member	→ aile üyesi	online course	→ internet üzeri ders/kurs
online identity	→ internet kimliği	online friend	→ internet arkadaşı
unknown people	→ tanıdık olmayan kişiler		



EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1. unknown | <u>2</u> | a. game |
| 2. multiplayer | <u>9</u> | b. time |
| 3. flat | <u>3</u> | c. screen |
| 4. family | <u>4</u> | d. member |
| 5. old | <u>1</u> | e. people |
| 6. word | <u>6</u> | f. combination |
| 7. WhatsApp | <u>5</u> | g. files |
| 8. Internet | <u>10</u> | h. blog |
| 9. free | <u>8</u> | i. connection |
| 10. science | <u>7</u> | j. group |



2

Complete the sentences with the phrases below.

online course

family members

technology blogs

bank account

street animals

homeless people

vlog address

safety rules

1. None of my family members spend too much time online.
2. Jadon has a project about how to protect street animals.
3. I want to follow Gary's videos, but I don't know his vlog address.
4. My uncle uses the Internet just for checking his bank account.
5. There are lots of homeless in my country. I think the government should build houses for them.
6. Allen is interested in technology blogs on the Internet. He likes following the latest developments and learning about new tools and devices.
7. Chris is looking for an effective online course to develop his French.
8. It's necessary for everyone to be careful and follow specific safety rules on the Internet.

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. It's wrong to share your **word combination** / **personal information** on the Internet.
2. If you want to improve your English, you should follow **free time** / **foreign series**.
3. The **online identity** / **connection sign** isn't on, so I can't send an email right now.
4. People can share photos and videos on **social networking sites** / **online friends**.
5. Fernando never accepts the friend requests from **unknown people** / **online identity**.
6. I can't find my last birthday pictures. I need to organise my **old files** / **vlog address**.
7. This isn't a/an **online game** / **safe website**, so you should be careful.
8. I go online to read **science blogs** / **flat surfaces**.

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-13: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. **Loris** : Are you always careful on the Internet?

Jane : Yes, of course. I _____ all the necessary safety rules when I go online.

- A) obey B) modify
C) interact D) refuse

2. Judy and Fred never _____ music on the Internet.

- A) connect B) chat
 C) download D) sound

3.



Rose

I'm interested in _____. Facebook is my favourite.

- A) technology blogs
B) health cures
 C) social networking sites
D) multiplayer games

4. **Gloria** : How many hours do you usually _____?

David : Two hours. I don't spend too much time on the Internet.

- A) click on B) fill in
C) log out D) stay online

5. **Hillary** : What kind of _____ does your mother follow?

Lale : Cooking and health.

- A) science blogs B) websites
C) bloggers D) connections

6. **Tarik** : How many hours do you _____ on the Internet?

Faysal : It differs, but usually 2 hours.

- A) develop B) vary
C) increase D) spend

7. You must _____ an account to share photos on this website.

- A) create B) refuse
C) browse D) catch

8. This website isn't very popular because it has only a few _____.

- A) passwords B) punctuations
 C) subscribers D) attachments

9. I'm not very popular on Facebook. I hardly ever get _____.

- A) languages B) keyboards
 C) notifications D) journalists

10.



Sally

What do you think about the Internet?

I think it makes life easier for people. I mean it's _____ in many ways.



Gerard

- A) functional B) broken
C) ironic D) offline

11. You must never share your password with others. It's your _____.

- A) letter B) member
 C) secret D) browser

12. **Gary** : When I send an email to you, you never _____ it? Why?

Marta : I'm so sorry, but I rarely check my email account.

- A) interact
 B) vary
 C) reply
 D) practise

13. This newspaper is extremely popular. It has a _____ of 5 million.

- A) readership
 B) fear
 C) software
 D) fashion

14. Hera spends less than two hours on the Internet every day. She is an Internet addict. She goes online to follow science blogs and check her bank accounts.

Which of the underlined words is ODD?

- A) addict
 B) online
 C) science
 D) accounts

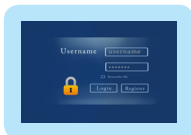
15. **Internet Rules**

- I. Avoid _____ dangerous sites.
 II. Don't _____ your personal information with anybody.

Choose the best option to fill in the gaps.

- A) logging in / register
 B) refusing / allow
 C) visiting / follow
 D) browsing / share

16. I. password



III. friend request



II. vlog



IV. software



Which pair is WRONG?

- A) I
 B) II
 C) III
 D) IV

17. 1. stay a. up
 2. log b. in
 3. sign c. for
 4. look d. online

Match the halves of the phrases.

- A) 1 - d / 2 - a / 3 - b / 4 - c
 B) 1 - d / 2 - b / 3 - a / 4 - c
 C) 1 - c / 2 - a / 3 - d / 4 - b
 D) 1 - d / 2 - b / 3 - c / 4 - a

18.

facebook	
-	online friends
-	social networking sites
-	photos and videos
-	_____

Which option completes the list?

- A) notifications
 B) pollution
 C) computer labs
 D) street animals

19. **A:** How do you _____ to the Internet?

B: I use my smartphone.

A: Do you go _____ every day?

B: Yes, but I don't spend more than an hour on the Internet.

Choose the best option to fill in the gaps in the dialogue.

- A) refuse / social media
 B) comment / addiction
 C) connect / online
 D) accept / subscribers

20. Google is a/an flat surface.

The underlined phrase is wrong. Which of the following phrases can we replace with it?

- A) connection sign
 B) video blog
 C) search engine
 D) online game

GRAMMAR 1

Accepting & Refusing / Making Excuses

- ▶ When somebody has a suggestion, an offer or invitation for us, we either accept or refuse it. We sometimes give a reason / an excuse to refuse.
- ▶ We can use different expressions to accept or refuse an invitation.

EXAMPLE: **A:** Shall we go to the cinema?
 B: That sounds awesome! / No, thanks. I'm really busy.
- ▶ We can also use these following structures to accept offers or invitations.

- Yes, sure.	- That's a good idea.
- That sounds awesome!	- Awesome idea!
- This is a nice idea.	- That would be awesome.
- That's nice.	- It would be great.
- Nice idea.	
- ▶ And there is a special one...
 - I'm busy, but I can't refuse that.
- ▶ We can also use these following structures to refuse offers or invitations.
 - No, thanks.
 - I'm busy, thanks.
 - Thanks for asking, but I'm busy.
 - That's not a good idea.
 - I'm sorry, but I must finish my science project.
 - I'm sorry, but I can't.
 - That's a bad idea.

EXAMPLES : 1. **A :** What about chatting on WhatsApp this evening?
 B : Thanks for asking, but I must study maths.

2. **A :** Why don't we chat online tonight?
 B : Thanks for asking, but there is a problem with my Internet connection.

3. **A :** Would you like to join our WhatsApp group?
 B : That's a good idea.
- ▶ If we like the idea, but we can't accept the offer, we can use the following structures.
 - I'd love to, but I can't because I'm too busy.
 - Great idea, but I'm busy.
 - That would be awesome, but my laptop is broken.
- ▶ And there is a special one...
 - That's very kind of you, but I'm busy.



EXERCISES

1

Put the words into the correct order. Then write sentences in the spaces below.

1. idea / that / awesome / is / an.
2. idea / this / a / nice / is.
3. awesome / be / but / I'm / busy / would / that.
4. I'm / thanks, / but / busy.
5. of / that's / I'm / kind / very / busy / you / but.
6. asking / free / thanks / but / I'm / for /not.
7. be / that / but / broken / Internet / awesome / would / my
8. but / busy / refuse / I'm / it / can't / I.

1. That is an awesome idea .
2. This is a nice idea .
3. That would be awesome, but I'm busy .
4. Thanks, but I'm busy .
5. That's very kind of you, but I'm busy .
6. Thanks for asking, but I'm not free .
7. That would be awesome, but my Internet is broken .
8. I'm busy, but I can't refuse it .

2

Write the sentences under the correct categories.

ACCEPTING

That's a great idea.

Yes, sure.

That would be nice.

That sounds awesome

I'm busy, but I can't refuse it.

REFUSING

Thanks for asking, but I'm not free today.

That would be awesome, but I'm busy.

I'd love to, but I'm studying English this weekend.

Sounds great, but I have another plan.

This is very kind of you, but I'm busy.

1. Thanks for asking, but I'm not free today.
2. That's a great idea!
3. That would be awesome, but I'm busy.
4. I'd love to, but I'm studying English this weekend.
5. Yes, sure.
6. That would be nice.
7. That sounds awesome.
8. Sounds great, but I have another plan.
9. This is very kind of you, but I'm busy.
10. I'm busy, but I can't refuse it.

- ▶ We can use **'Why don't we...?'** or **'Would you like to...?'** to make an offer.
- ▶ To make a suggestion, we can use **'Why don't you...?'**

- **Why don't / doesn't + I/you/he/she/it/we/they + verb?**

Example : Why don't we follow this vlog?

- ✓ Yes, that would be awesome.
- ✗ No, thanks. I'm busy.

- **Would + I/you/he/she/it/we/they + like to +verb?**

Example : Would you like to follow us on Instagram?

- ✓ Yes, that would be interesting.
- ✗ No, thanks.



EXERCISE

Match the questions to the responds.

1. Would you like to follow my health cure website?
 2. Why don't we join their WhatsApp group? They share awesome adventure videos.
 3. Why don't you get help from the service? Your connection sign is off.
 4. Would you like to create a new account? The old one isn't good.
 5. Why don't you read online articles?
 6. Why don't you spend less time on the Internet?
 7. Would you like to follow my video blogs?
 8. Would you like to join her gardening blog?
- 4 a. Thanks, but I like this account. It is old, but these posts are very important for me.
- 2 b. Nice idea, but I am not interested in adventure.
- 5 c. Thanks buddy, but I don't prefer reading anything online.
- 6 d. Sounds terrible! I can't live without the Internet.
- 3 e. OK. I will call the service. You're right.
- 8 f. Wow! Great idea. I love gardening.
- 7 g. Yes, can you send me your address? What is your blog about?
- 1 h. Sure. I will follow. I like looking for new cures.

GRAMMAR 2

ASKING FOR CLARIFICATION

- ▶ While communicating, clarification is very important. When you don't understand something that someone says, you can ask him/her to clarify what s/he says.
- ▶ To want somebody to clarify, we can use 'What do you mean?' or 'Do you mean...?'

What	do	you I we they	mean?
	does	he she it	

EXAMPLE: A: You must be careful with what you share online.

B: What do you mean?

A: I mean, something you post may stay online forever.

B: I understand. Thanks.

- ▶ As an answer, we use '**I mean ...**' to clarify our point.



EXERCISE

Order the words to write meaningful sentences in the spaces.

1. do / mean / connection / the / you / Internet?
2. mean / you / what / do?
3. I / you / mean / shouldn't / spend / time / on / Internet / the / much / too.
4. she / what / mean / does?
5. he / I / must / careful / means / be / with / my / password.
6. account / mean / you / do / my?

1. **Do you mean the Internet connection** _____ ?
2. **What do you mean** _____ ?
3. **I mean you shouldn't spend too much time on the Internet** _____ .
4. **What does she mean** _____ ?
5. **He means I must be careful with my password** _____ .
6. **Do you mean my account** _____ ?

1. Which of the following is an excuse?
- A) I'm sorry, but I can't.
 - B) Would you like to join our blog?
 - C) I'd love to sign in.
 - D) That would be awesome, but I must study for my exam.

2. Which of the following is WRONG?
- A) Sounds nice. – Accepting
 - B) I'd like to, but I'm busy. – Making an excuse
 - C) Why don't we follow this site? – Refusing
 - D) That's an awesome idea! – Accepting

3. Sude asks Berk to follow her technology blog, but Berk makes an excuse and refuses her offer.

Which of the following can be Berk's answer?

- A) I am keen on technology, but I don't have an Internet connection at home. I'm sorry.
 - B) Great idea, but I don't know your address. Can you send it via Instagram?
 - C) Sounds excellent! Did you create it by yourself?
 - D) I don't know how to register. Can you tell me?
4. Internet / do / the / mean / you / connection?

Which of the following is the correct order of the sentence?

- A) Do you connection to the Internet mean?
 - B) Do mean you the Internet connection?
 - C) Do you the mean connection Internet?
 - D) Do you mean the Internet connection?
5. That sounds great! I like following video blogs.
- Which of the following is the question of the statement above?
- A) Why don't we get help from the service?
 - B) Would you like to sign in for my science blog?
 - C) Why don't you register for my new vlog?
 - D) How often do you follow video blogs?

6. 1. Thanks, buddy. I don't like surfing on websites. Why don't we watch a series?
2. We can watch Lost.
3. How about surfing on some nice science websites?
4. That's a great idea. What would you like to watch?

To make a meaningful dialogue, which of the following orders is CORRECT?

- A) 3 / 4 / 1 / 2
- B) 3 / 1 / 4 / 2
- C) 3 / 1 / 2 / 4
- D) 4 / 3 / 1 / 2

7.



Paul

What do you mean?

Do you mean that I should be careful with my account?



Nelly



Sally

I mean, you must keep your password safe.

Would you like to join our new group?



Alex

Who is making a clarification?

- A) Paul
- C) Sally
- B) Nelly
- D) Alex

8. 1. That's a great idea!
2. I'm afraid I can't.
3. That's very kind of you, but I'm not free.

Choose the correct option for the sentences above.

- A) 1- Accepting / 2- Refusing / 3- Making an excuse
- B) 2- Accepting / 1- Refusing / 3- Making an excuse
- C) 3- Accepting / 2- Refusing / 1- Making an excuse
- D) 1- Accepting / 3- Refusing / 2- Making an excuse

9-20 : For these questions, choose the correct options to fill in the blanks.

9. **Betty** : Would you like _____ to the cinema?

Teresa : That would be great, but I'm ill.

- A) to go B) goes
C) to going D) going

10. **Jill** : What do you use the Internet for?

Ömer : _____?

Jill : I mean, what do you do on the Internet?

Ömer : Oh! I watch my favourite series and read science articles.

- A) Are you watching movies
B) Who do you follow on the Internet
C) What do you mean
D) Do you mean my habits at home

11. **Pinar** : _____ she mean my vlog account?

Hakan : Yes, he does. She wants to subscribe.

- A) What B) Do
C) Don't D) Does

12. **Sally** : Why _____ you join our WhatsApp group?

Clara : Sure. That's a good idea.

- A) does B) isn't
C) are D) don't

13. **Çiğdem** : Would you like to sign up for my health website?

Marcos : _____ . What is your address?
Can you send it to me on WhatsApp?

- A) No, thanks
B) Yes, Sure
C) That's a great idea, but I can't
D) I'm sorry, but I'm busy

14. **Öykü** : I think having online friends is dangerous.

Nazan : _____ do you mean?

- A) Where B) What
C) How D) Why

15. **Nora** : Would you like _____ online tonight?

Carla : Yes, that's a good idea.

- A) chatting B) chat
C) chats D) to chat

16. **Kuzey** : Why don't you create a new account on Facebook?

Rüzgar : That's a good idea, _____ I'm too busy.

- A) and B) with C) but D) or

17. **Melek** : _____ we shop online?

Sally : No, that's not a good idea.

- A) How B) What
C) Would like D) Why don't

18. **Nelly** : Would you like to send an email to Steve?

Helen : _____ because he never replies.

- A) Sure
B) That sounds awesome
C) No, that's not a good idea
D) I'd love to

19. **Sally** : _____ you join our WhatsApp group?

Clara : Sure. That's a good idea.

- A) Would like B) What do
C) Do think D) Why don't

20. **Fred** : Let's create a new WhatsApp group!

Mark : _____ . I'm really busy.

- A) Great idea B) Sure
C) I can't refuse it D) No, thanks

READING

BE SAFE ON THE INTERNET!

The Internet is functional in many ways. It provides lots of opportunities for people like browsing websites, following blogs, studying online, chatting with friends, surfing on social networking sites etc. There are many useful sites that you can follow. For example, you can be a subscriber to science or technology blogs. You can create a vlog account of yourself and share your studies or project on it. You can surf through health, sports and culture related sites. However, going online brings plenty of risks together. There are millions of social media users across the world. It's not very safe to get in touch with the people who we don't know on social networking sites.

It may be dangerous to accept friend requests from strangers. Some people have fake accounts. You also need to be very careful about the things you share on the Internet. When you search for information, use safe websites. Some sites may carry viruses and harm your computer. When you read the news on the Internet, don't believe in all the things you see. Another important thing is before you download a file, you should make sure it's safe.



1. Which sentence is TRUE according to the text?

- A) The Internet is completely harmful.
- B) People can do different things online.
- C) All websites are dangerous.
- D) Social media isn't popular in the world.

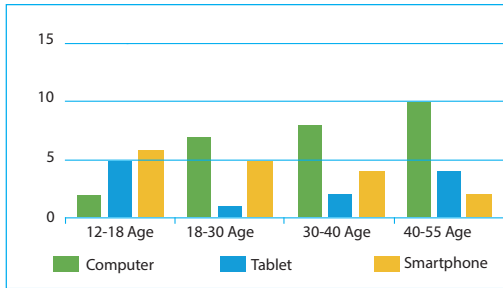
2. Which sentence is WRONG according to the text?

- A) It's possible to keep in touch with people through the Internet.
- B) Social media users need to follow some safety rules.
- C) Some information may not be true on the Internet.
- D) You can download any files on the Internet.

3. Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

- A) What can people do on the Internet?
- B) How should people connect to the Internet?
- C) Why is the Internet functional?
- D) What should people do to be safe on social media?

1. The table below is about how certain age groups connect to the Internet.



According to the chart, _____.

Which option completes the sentence?

- A) older people generally use their smartphones to go online
- B) teenagers use their tablets mostly
- C) people between 30-40 mostly use their tablets to connect to the Internet
- D) the youngest age group usually uses their smartphones to go online**

2. This is a school survey about online activities.

ACTIVITIES	ACCEPTING	REFUSING
to subscribe to a science blog	150	25
to create an online identity on social media	125	50
to comment on their friends' photos	70	105
to follow an online course	90	85

Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the information above?

- A) Joining an online course is the least popular activity.
- B) Science blogs are very popular among them.**
- C) Almost all of them like commenting on their friends' pictures.
- D) Social networking sites are more popular than science blogs.

3. **Baran** : I have a blog. I share posts about global warming. I'd like to invite you to register for my blog. Now, I'm going to tell you how to register.

- I. I will send you my blog address.
- II. Click on that address.
- III. You'll see the sign-up button and click on it.
- IV. Fill in the personal information boxes such as your nickname and password to sign up.
- V. Automatically, you will get an email to confirm your account after you complete the signing up steps.

Which pictures shows the step after the registration?



4. **Gazi** : How often do you go online?
Firat : What do you mean?
Gazi : I mean, how often do you surf on the Internet?
Firat : I use the Internet moderately. Maybe twice a day. It takes an hour totally.
Gazi : What do you use it for?
Firat : I use it to read e-books or follow my favourite technology blogs.

Which of the following is TRUE according to the dialogue?

- A) Firat is getting addicted to the Internet day by day.
- B) Gazi doesn't understand the first question and asks for clarification.
- C) Gazi doesn't understand Firat's question.
- D) Firat doesn't spend too much time online.**

NARTEST

TEST

5.



Important Internet Rules

- Don't share your personal information with anybody.
- Refuse unknown people's friend requests.
- Keep your password safe.
- Don't believe in all the news on the Internet.
- Be careful about the posts you share online.

You won't have a safe online experience, if you _____.

Choose the best option to complete the sentence.

- A) don't share your password with other people
- B) are careful about the things you share on the Net
- C) confirm the friend requests from total strangers
- D) don't believe in all the information on the Internet

6. **Elanur** : Please obey the Internet safety rules when you go online. It's very important.

Fatma : What do you mean?

Elanur : I mean, _____.

Fatma : I think you're right. I'll be careful about that.

Which of the following completes the dialogue?

- A) having online friends isn't dangerous
- B) don't share your personal information and password with anyone
- C) you must comment on everybody's photos
- D) you should spend more time on the Internet

7.



Ray

Everyone uses the Internet in my family. Nobody is an Internet addict because we do not spend too much time on the Internet. I

think the Internet is functional in many ways. I do my homework by browsing some blogs and education websites. I connect to the Internet via my laptop. My sisters use their smartphones to go online.

Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

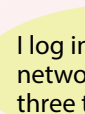
- A) Why nobody is addicted to the Internet in Ray's family?
- B) How do Ray's sisters connect to the Internet?
- C) How many hours does Ray spend online every day?
- D) How does Ray go online?

8.



Dora

I download music and documentaries on my smartphone.



I log in to my social networking accounts three times a day.

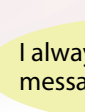


Andrea



Simon

I only confirm the friends' requests from the people who I know.



I always delete the old messages in my inbox.



Mesut

Which of the following symbol DOES NOT match with an activity above?

- A)
- B)
- C)
- D)

NEW TEST

NEW TEST

NEW GENERATION QUESTIONS

9.



Burak

I use the Internet for my studies and projects. I spend about an hour on the Internet every day.



Kyle

I use the Internet for new recipes and health cures. I go online for an hour at the weekend.

I usually check my notifications and e-mails on the Internet. I go online for two hours.



Craig

I use the Internet for lots of reasons. I post lots of photos and videos on social media every day. I spend over eight hours online.



Cemil

Who is an Internet addict?

A) Kyle

B) Cemil

C) Craig

D) Burak

10.



Helen

I can't imagine a world without the Internet. I think it's very important for global communication. People can use social networking sites to post photos and videos. They can also search for information and join online courses. However, some people spend too much time online and become addicted. Another problem is some websites aren't safe to visit, so people should be careful.

Helen is talking about _____ .

Choose the best option to complete the sentence.

- A) some pros and cons of the Internet
- B) the history of the Internet
- C) the Internet habits of some people
- D) the negative sides of the Internet

ADVENTURES

*Life without dreams is like a bird with a broken wing.
-Dan Pena*



We are going to learn :

- ✍ expressing preferences
- ✍ giving explanations and reasons
- ✍ making simple comparisons

UNIT 6

UNIT 6 ADVENTURES

Common Expressions



It is not only for young people but also for the old ones.

It seems dangerous.

It requires a lot of courage.

It is one of the most exciting activities.

What do you need for this sport?

Why do you prefer it?

I think scuba diving is more challenging than canoeing.

I would rather go rafting because it is easier.

I think extreme sports are more exciting than indoor sports.

What are their professions?

Do you know any adventurers?

What is the aim of it?

How can you describe your job?

You can do it individually or as a group.

Sadece gençler için değil aynı zamanda yaşlılar için de.

Tehlikeli görünüyor.

Çok fazla cesaret gerektiriyor.

En heyecan verici aktivitelerden biri.

Bu spor için neye ihtiyacın var?

Onun eden tercih edersin?

Bence tüple dalış kano sporundan daha zordur.

Raftinge gitmeyi tercih ederim çünkü daha kolay.

Bence aksiyon sporları kapalı mekan sporlardan daha heyecan verici.

Onların meslekleri ne?

Hiç maceracı tanıyor musun?

Onun amacı ne?

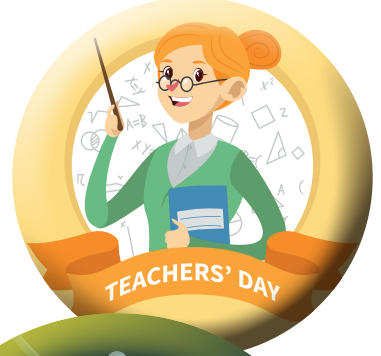
Mesleğini nasıl tanımlarsın?

Onu hem bireysel hem de grup olarak yapabilirsin.

VOCABULARY 1

JOB

farmer	→	çiftçi
teacher	→	öğretmen
electrician	→	elektrikçi
police officer	→	polis memuru
window cleaner	→	pencere temizleyici
stuntman	→	dublör
astronaut	→	astronot
coal miner	→	madenci
fire fighter	→	itfaiyeci
air traffic controller	→	hava trafiği kontrolçüsü
call center specialist	→	çağrı merkezi uzmanı
dietician	→	diyetisyen
fighter pilot	→	savaş pilotu
instructor	→	eğitmen
scientist	→	bilim adamı
squadron commander	→	hava filosu kumandanı



LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1 Write the words under the pictures.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> farmer | <input type="checkbox"/> coal miner | <input type="checkbox"/> teacher | <input type="checkbox"/> scientist |
| <input type="checkbox"/> electrician | <input type="checkbox"/> fire fighter | <input type="checkbox"/> astronaut | <input type="checkbox"/> dietician |



scientist



electrician



farmer



teacher



fire fighter



coal miner



astronaut



dietician

2

Fill in the blanks with the jobs below.

 dietician

 fighter pilot

 astronaut

 stuntman

 police officer

 farmer

 air traffic controller

 instructor

1. Sarah is a /an farmer. She grows organic fruit and vegetables.
2. I think you should see a /an dietician about your eating habits.
3. Sarah's father is a/an police officer, but he doesn't carry a gun.
4. Jack is a / an air traffic controller. His job is tiring because he manages lots of planes as they take off and land every day.
5. It's my son's dream to be a / an astronaut and travel to space one day.
6. A / An fighter pilot can perform military operations in the air.
7. Brad Pitt always uses a / an stuntman for dangerous scenes.
8. If you are inexperienced, you should jump with a / an instructor.

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. Cüneyt Arkin never uses a stuntman / instructor. He takes part in every action scene of his movies.
2. My sister is a ~~dietician~~ / call center specialist. She helps customers on the phone and solves their problems.
3. My dream is being a squadron commander / scientist. In my opinion, being the leader of an armed force is amazing.
4. Window cleaners / Teachers have a risky job. They can fall and get injured anytime.
5. Aziz Sancar is the first Turkish ~~astronaut~~ / scientist who won the Nobel Prize in Chemistry.
6. A police officer / farmer stopped me when I exceeded the speed limit and he gave me a fine.

VOCABULARY 2

ADJECTIVES

amusing	→	eğlenceli	dangerous	→	tehlikeli
boring	→	sıkıcı	mysterious	→	gizemli
challenging	→	zorlu	popular	→	popüler
disappointing	→	hayal kırıklığına uğraticı	comfortable	→	rahat
entertaining	→	eğlenceli	ambitious	→	hırslı
exciting	→	heyecan verici	fearless	→	korkusuz
fascinating	→	büyüleyici	scientific	→	bilimsel
interesting	→	ilginç	stressful	→	stresli
risky	→	riskli	magnificent	→	büyüleyici
nervous	→	gergin	wonderful	→	müthiş
afraid	→	korkmuş	outdoor	→	açık hava
experienced	→	tecrübeli	indoor	→	kapalı mekan
inexperienced	→	tecrübesiz	aerobic	→	hava akrobasisi
adventurous	→	maceralı, maceracı	acrobatic	→	akrobatik
amazing	→	şaşırtıcı	included	→	dahil

EXERCISES

1

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

1. Skydiving is a very **disappointing** / **popular** extreme sport. Many people want to try it.
2. You must be **magnificent** / **ambitious** to become an astronaut because it is not an easy job.
3. Being a coal miner is very **dangerous** / **fearless**. You go down to a dark place at the bottom of the ground.
4. My favorite summer activity is going caving. Exploring **aerobic** / **mysterious** places makes me feel excited.
5. You are **experienced** / **inexperienced**, so you need an instructor to try paragliding.
6. Skydiving is a / an **risky** / **amazing** sport, so you need to follow all the necessary safety instructions.
7. Selin would rather go rafting than canoeing. She thinks, rafting is more **boring** / **amusing** than canoeing.
8. You look very **comfortable** / **nervous**. You need to calm down.

2

Find and circle the 6 adjectives in the word-search puzzle. Then write the them next to the numbers.

K	C	H	A	L	L	E	N	G	I	N	G	M	X	R	R
L	F	Y	U	R	I	R	L	L	D	N	Q	P	G	T	W
D	C	O	M	F	O	R	T	A	B	L	E	O	J	A	G
L	F	E	L	O	A	S	H	X	C	W	Z	S	Q	X	Z
T	K	D	Z	Y	M	S	T	D	S	O	L	L	X	J	U
O	K	I	R	O	N	Y	R	L	P	N	W	E	X	J	X
N	J	H	D	B	O	R	I	N	G	D	M	B	X	T	L
S	P	K	V	Q	T	Y	S	D	P	E	E	T	R	C	D
S	U	Q	J	L	U	H	T	T	K	R	U	P	H	U	I
Y	X	Q	S	C	I	E	N	T	I	F	I	C	G	J	R
E	E	A	Q	X	V	K	O	G	P	U	W	Y	V	J	W
B	I	V	Q	O	T	O	K	D	J	L	N	Y	X	H	K
B	T	A	F	R	A	I	D	E	C	N	N	I	K	I	P

1. CHALLENGING
2. COMFORTABLE
3. BORING
4. SCIENTIFIC
5. AFRAID
6. WONDERFUL

3

Match the adjectives with their definitions.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------|--|
| 1. exciting | <u>5</u> | a. funny and enjoyable |
| 2. indoor | <u>6</u> | b. extremely interesting |
| 3. acrobatic | <u>1</u> | c. causing great enthusiasm and eagerness |
| 4. stressful | <u>8</u> | d. large in amount, size or degree |
| 5. entertaining | <u>7</u> | e. full of excitement and often dangerous |
| 6. fascinating | <u>2</u> | f. happening , used or existing inside a building |
| 7. adventurous | <u>3</u> | g. involving difficult and attractive body movements |
| 8. great | <u>4</u> | h. making you feel worried and nervous |

VOCABULARY 3

EXTREME SPORTS

rafting	→	rafting
kayaking	→	su kayağı
skydiving	→	gökyüzü dalışı
indoor skydiving	→	kapalı mekan gökyüzü dalışı
scuba diving	→	tüplü dalış
canoeing	→	kano sporu
paragliding	→	yamaç paraşütü
caving	→	mağaracılık, mağara sporu
hang-gliding	→	deltakanat sporu
skateboarding	→	kaykay yapma
motor-racing	→	motor/araba yarışı
bungee-jumping	→	ayağına ip bağlayıp atılan bir tür spor
mountain-biking	→	dağ bisikleti
rock climbing	→	kaya tırmanışı



LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Write the names of the extreme sports under the pictures.

- caving mountain biking canoeing indoor skydiving
 hang-gliding rock climbing kayaking skateboarding

1.



canoeing

2.



caving

3.



mountain biking

4.



rock climbing

5.



skateboarding

6.



hang-gliding

7.



indoor skydiving

8.



kayaking

2

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

1. I prefer paragliding (argpdlgiaim) to rock climbing.
2. I think skydiving (diygvksni) is a fascinating sport.
3. Linda goes caving (ivacng) every summer.
4. In my opinion, mountain biking (notnmaiu kgbini) is disappointing.
5. Ray's favorite extreme sport is rock climbing (okrc nigcblim) .
6. Rafting (afigntr) is a very popular water sport in my city.
7. I would rather go scuba diving (baucs invdig) on my summer holidays.
8. Norman prefers skateboarding (teboardskaing) to cycling.

3

Solve the puzzle by using the definitions of the extreme sports.



Across

4. the sport of aiming to reach the finish line with a car
5. the sport of travelling down a river with a rubber boat
6. the sport of jumping off a very high bridge or similar structure, with a long elastic rope tied to your legs

Down

1. the sport of swimming underwater with special breathing equipment
2. jumping out of a plane and opening the parachute to slow down
3. the sport of paddling a light, narrow boat

VOCABULARY 4

EQUIPMENT

helmet	→	kask	glove	→	eldiven
paddle	→	kısa kürek	torch	→	el feneri
dry-suit	→	vücudu kuru tutan dalgıç kıyafeti	cave pack	→	mağara çantası
wetsuit	→	dalgıç giysisi	bootie	→	patik
skateboard	→	kaykay	raft	→	sal
elbow pad	→	dirsek koruyucu	wing	→	kanat
knee pad	→	diz koruyucu	flight instrument	→	uçuş aleti
kayak	→	kano	flight suit	→	uçuş takımı / giysisi
life jacket	→	can yeleği	parachute	→	paraşüt
clothing	→	giysi	armour	→	zırh
footwear	→	ayakkabı	goggles	→	gözlük
sock	→	çorap	wrist guard	→	bilek koruyucu
spray skirt	→	kanoya suyun girmesini engelleyen ekipman			

EXERCISES

1 Match each extreme sport with its necessary equipment list.

caving

mountain biking

motor-racing

kayaking

scuba diving

hang-gliding

1.	a helmet / a torch / a cave pack / a footwear / socks	<u>caving</u>
2.	knee pads / elbow pads / a helmet / wrist guards	<u>mountain biking</u>
3.	a dry-suit / goggles / gloves / a wetsuit	<u>scuba diving</u>
4.	flight instruments / flight suits / wings / a helmet	<u>hang-gliding</u>
5.	a paddle / a kayak / a life jacket / a spray skirt	<u>kayaking</u>
6.	armour / boots / gloves / goggles / a helmet	<u>motor-racing</u>

2

Write the names of the equipment under the pictures.

paddle

wrist guard

torch

goggles

helmet

spray skirt

wetsuit

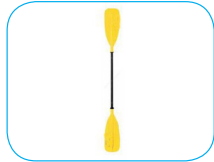
knee pad

1.



helmet

2.



paddle

3.



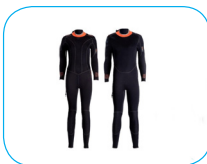
spray skirt

4.



wrist guard

5.



wetsuit

6.



knee pad

7.



goggles

8.



torch

3

Find and circle the 8 words in the word-search puzzle. Then write them next to the numbers.

I	A	R	M	O	U	R	E	L	D	J	M	M	L
F	K	M	L	K	R	A	B	O	P	E	G	C	C
O	X	O	U	J	U	B	B	O	O	T	I	E	T
O	W	T	I	Y	E	T	B	Q	Y	O	Y	O	S
T	P	A	R	A	C	H	U	T	E	K	C	Q	B
W	D	V	G	S	K	A	T	E	B	O	A	R	D
E	W	J	F	Y	M	E	A	F	L	Z	Y	C	B
A	M	L	L	Z	A	E	R	L	B	E	B	C	M
R	B	Z	H	K	W	X	C	I	T	U	P	Z	G
T	M	Z	E	R	I	W	L	G	A	X	S	O	J
M	H	Q	Q	S	N	X	O	H	N	O	A	G	N
O	I	H	J	J	G	Z	T	T	S	S	J	F	T
N	P	D	R	H	W	G	H	S	J	J	I	U	P
T	P	M	P	M	K	F	I	U	R	S	N	A	Y
M	F	X	T	I	O	O	N	I	V	Y	C	I	H
K	W	G	E	N	Q	R	G	T	G	Q	C	T	Q

1. ARMOUR
2. BOOT
3. FOOTWEAR
4. PARACHUTE
5. SKATEBOARD
6. WING
7. CLOTHING
8. FLIGHT SUIT

VOCABULARY 5

VERBS

fly	→	uçmak	try	→	denemek
succeed	→	başarmak	improve	→	geliştirmek
perform	→	yapmak / gösteri yapmak	break	→	kırmak
explore	→	keşfetmek	survive	→	hayatta kalmak
need	→	ihtiyaç duymak	reach	→	ulaşmak
require	→	gerekmek	protect	→	korumak
wear	→	giymek	become	→	olmak
check	→	kontrol etmek	move	→	hareket etmek
carry	→	taşımak	produce	→	üretmek
seem	→	görünmek	land	→	iniş yapmak
experience	→	tecrübe etmek / deneyimlemek	vary	→	çeşitlilik göstermek
describe	→	betimlemek / tanımlamak			

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the verbs below.

- land improve succeed survive
 vary check try move

1. Skydivers open their parachute to slow down before they land.
2. I'm not good at swimming. I need to improve my swimming skills.
3. Terry wants to try paragliding next week, but he's a bit nervous. He doesn't know anything about this sport.
4. Safety rules vary from sport to sport.
5. If you want to succeed, you need to work harder.
6. Motor-racing is a very dangerous extreme sport. The cars in the race move very fast.
7. Yuka wants to go camping and learn how to survive in nature. Her aim is to learn some exciting life skills in a difficult atmosphere.
8. Before going caving you should check your equipment carefully for your own safety.

2

Solve the puzzle by reading the definitions below.

**Across**

1. to search and discover about something
4. to transport something from one place to another
6. the process of getting knowledge or skill from doing, seeing, or feeling things
7. to do an action or entertain people by dancing, singing or acting

Down

2. to need something
3. to keep someone or something safe from injury, damage, or loss
5. to have clothing, jewellery, etc. on your body
8. moving through the air by using wings

VOCABULARY 6

NOUNS

member	→	üye	wind	→	rüzgar
person	→	insan	accident	→	kaza
location	→	yer	adventurer	→	maceracı
transportation	→	taşıma	fall	→	düşüş
demonstration	→	gösteri	importance	→	önem
speed	→	hız	success	→	başarı
distance	→	mesafe	bravery	→	cesaret
experience	→	tecrübe / deneyim	occupation	→	meslek
abroad	→	yurt dışı	nature	→	doğa
profession	→	meslek	catering	→	yeme içme
view	→	manzara	accommodation	→	konaklama
land	→	kara	pair	→	çift
century	→	yüzyıl	track	→	pist
courage	→	cesaret	aim	→	amaç
adrenaline	→	adrenalin	district	→	bölge
backup	→	yedek	manoeuvre	→	manevra
plane	→	uçak	jet	→	jet uçağı
movement	→	hareket			

LEARN STEP BY STEP

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

extreme sport	→	aksiyon sporu
free fall	→	serbest düşüş
weather condition	→	hava durumu
finish line	→	bitiş çizgisi
aircraft industry	→	uçak endüstrisi
all-inclusive	→	her şey dahil
age range	→	yaş aralığı



EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. free | (4..) inclusive | 5. age | (6..) sport |
| 2. finish | (1..) fall | 6. extreme | (3..) industry |
| 3. aircraft | (5..) range | 7. weather | (2..) line |
| 4. all | (7..) condition | | |

2

Write the words under the pictures below.

 track

 transportation

 plane

 finish line

 pair

 view

 accident

 extreme sport

1.



tarck

2.



view

3.



finish line

4.



accident

5.



plane

6.



extreme sport

7.



pair

8.



transportation

3

Fill in the blanks with the words below.

 catering

 aim

 backup

 courage

 fall

 location

 nature

 adventurer

- I don't want to work in catering because I hate cooking.
- The aim of motor-racing is to reach the finish line first.
- Marie is a real adventurer. She enjoys extreme sports.
- The exact location of the camp is written in the brochure.
- When you go skydiving, you must carry a backup parachute. If your parachute doesn't open, you can use it.
- Being a fire fighter requires a lot of courage because it's a dangerous job.
- Camping is a great activity for me because I like being close to nature.
- In a free fall, a person's speed can reach 150km per hour.

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-13: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. Being a call center specialist _____ very easy, but it is a stressful job at the same time.

A) seems B) becomes
C) breaks D) varies

2.



Sally

What do you prefer doing on your summer holidays?

I prefer going caving because _____ mysterious places makes me feel excited.



Kelly

A) improving B) protecting
C) exploring D) describing

3. The speed of jets during manoeuvres _____ between 250 km and 1000 km.

A) produces B) wears
C) tries D) varies

4. **William** : Which one do you prefer? Hang-gliding or scuba diving?

Jenifer : I prefer hang-gliding to scuba diving because it is very _____ to watch the land from the air.

A) boring B) amusing
C) disappointing D) difficult

5. In all-inclusive hotels, catering and accommodation are _____ in the price.

A) experienced B) mysterious
C) included D) challenging

6. I exercise because I want to _____ healthier.

A) carry B) survive
C) become D) need

7. Susan wants to be a / an _____ in the future because she is interested in aerobatics.

A) squadron commander
B) stuntman
C) police officer
D) air traffic controller

8. We are looking for an experienced swimming _____ to teach small children some basic swimming skills.

A) call center specialist B) instructor
C) farmer D) dietician

9. To me, being an electrician is more _____ than being a farmer. Electricians take lots of risks.

A) dangerous B) afraid
C) aerobic D) comfortable

10. Albert Einstein was a well-known _____. He had incredible discoveries and theories.

A) teacher B) astronaut
C) scientist D) electrician

11. Japan's aircraft industry _____ a lot in the 20th century after the World War II. They still give great importance to scientific studies.

A) checked B) survived
C) broke D) improved

12. You need a spray skirt, a helmet, a life jacket, and a paddle for _____. It is a popular water extreme sport for adventurers.

A) scuba diving B) bungee-jumping
C) hang-gliding D) rafting

NARTEST

VOCABULARY TEST

13. Skydiving seems dangerous, but _____ rarely happen in this sport.

- A) accidents B) gloves
 C) booties D) cave packs

14. 1. paddle / helmet / dry-suit / wetsuit
 2. torch / cave pack / footwear / socks / helmet
 3. wings / flight instrument / helmet / flight suits

Which of the following extreme sports' necessary equipment list IS NOT given above?

- A) caving B) mountain biking
 C) hang-gliding D) rafting

15. I would rather go paragliding than canoeing. I think it's more entertaining and fascinating than canoeing. Watching the views over the land is really disappointing.

Which underlined word is ODD?

- A) paragliding B) fascinating
 C) entertaining D) disappointing

16.



My father's occupation is to put out fires. He is very experienced in his profession. It is a very stressful job, and it requires a lot of courage.

Which of the following shows Gary's father's job?

- A)  B) 
 C)  D) 

17. If you want to go rock climbing you shouldn't forget your equipment. You need a rope, a helmet, gloves and knee pads.

Which of the following equipment IS NOT necessary for rock climbing?

- A)  B) 
 C)  D) 

18. I. age → range
 II. free → condition
 III. finish → line
 IV. extreme → sport

Which pair is WRONG?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

19. Which of the following equipment IS NOT necessary for mountain-biking?

- A) life jacket B) knee pads
 C) helmet D) elbow pads

20.

- Paddle
- Spray skirt
- Life jacket
- Helmet
- Kayak

Choose the best title for the list.

- A) Equipment
 B) Outdoor Sports
 C) Water Extreme Sports
 D) Risky Professions

GRAMMAR 1

Expressing Preferences / Giving Explanations and Reasons

When we talk about our preferences we use 'prefer' and "would rather".

LEARN STEP BY STEP

Affirmative Form

I We You They	prefer	canoeing going canoeing	to	rafting.
He She It	prefers	skydiving going skydiving	to	paragliding.
I We You They He She It	would rather	go scuba diving	than	canoeing.

Negative Form

I We You They	don't prefer	rafting going rafting	to	bungee-jumping.
He She It	doesn't prefer	hang-gliding going hang-gliding	to	caving.
I We You They He She It	would rather not	go skateboarding	than	kayaking.



Question Form

Do	I we you they	prefer	playing golf	to	rock climbing?
Does	he she it	prefer	going canoeing	to	paragliding?
Would	I we you they	rather	go scuba diving	than	bungee-jumping?
Would	he she it	rather	go rafting	than	paragliding?



Short Answers

Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
 Yes, you do. / No, you don't.
 Yes, we do. / No, we don't.
 Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
 Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.
 Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.

Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.
 Yes, you would. / No, you wouldn't.
 Yes, we would. / No, we wouldn't.
 Yes, they would. / No, they wouldn't.
 Yes, he would. / No, he wouldn't.
 Yes, she would. / No, she wouldn't.
 Yes, it would. / No, it wouldn't.

Giving Explanations and Reasons

We use **'because'** to explain something or **give** reasons.

Study the following sentences.

- What do you prefer doing on your summer holidays?
 - ▶ I would rather go rafting than scuba-diving because it is more entertaining.
 - ▶ I prefer caving because it's entertaining.



EXERCISES

1

Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- I would rather going rafting to canoeing because it is more entertaining.
go / than
- She prefers mountain biking than bungee-jumping because she thinks it is more interesting.
to
- Amanda prefer extreme sports to indoor sports. She thinks they are more exciting.
prefers
- I like exploring new places with my friends. We usually prefer go caving together.
going
- They would rather not playing golf because they find it boring.
play
- Hakan prefers skydiving than paragliding.
to

LEARN STEP BY STEP

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

- What do you **would rather** / **prefer** doing on your summer holidays?
- Ayşe and Selin **would rather not do** / **would rather to do** indoor sports.
- I usually prefer **go** / **going** scuba diving to hang-gliding because it is more entertaining.
- I **would rather** / **prefer** going skydiving to bungee-jumping.
- Many people **prefer** / **would rather** skateboarding to other extreme sports.
- I **prefer** / **would rather** go camping in summers.

3

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of "would rather" and "prefer".

- Why do you prefer going caving in summers?
- We would rather go rafting than canoeing because it is more challenging.
- Would you rather go hang-gliding than paragliding?
- I would rather read travel books because they are more interesting than other book genres.
- Melisa doesn't prefer doing indoor sports because she thinks, they are boring.
- My mother doesn't prefer staying at home on Sundays. She enjoys going out.

GRAMMAR 2

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

Affirmative Forms

I	am	taller	than	Alison.
We You They	are	more experienced	than	Roger.
He She	is	luckier	than	Lilly.
It	is	less dangerous	than	paragliding.

Negative Forms

I	am not	taller	than	Alison.
We You They	aren't	more experienced	than	Roger.
He She	isn't	luckier	than	Lilly.
It	isn't	less dangerous	than	paragliding.

Question Forms

Am	I	taller	than	Alison?	Is	he /she	luckier	than	Lilly?
Are	we you they	more experienced	than	Roger?	Is	it	less dangerous	than	paragliding?

There are some rules to make comparisons.

- If the adjective has one syllable add **'-er'** at the end of the adjective.
 - big – bigger
 - small – smaller
 - short – shorter
 - nice – nicer
- If the adjective has two syllables and ends in **'-y'** change the end to **'-ier'**.
 - lucky – luckier
 - happy – happier
 - easy – easier
 - risky – riskier
- For the other adjectives with two syllables, you use **'more / less'** before the adjective.
 - boring – more/less boring
 - adventurous – more/less adventurous

exciting – more/less exciting
amazing – more/less amazing

- When you compare two things, you use **'than'**.

To me, paragliding is more exciting than rafting.

I think bungee-jumping is less dangerous than scuba diving.

- Remember that some adjectives are irregular when you make comparisons.

good – better
bad – worse
far – farther / further
much – more
little – less

1 Fill in the blanks with the comparative forms of the adjectives given in the parenthesis.

- Judy prefers doing extreme sports than indoor sports. She thinks they are more challenging (challenging).
- To me, skydiving is less amusing (amusing) than rafting. Rafting is my favourite.
- I would rather be a teacher than a dietician because it is easier (easy).
- They think all-inclusive hotels are more comfortable (comfortable) than bed and breakfast hotels.
- I think being a coal miner is more dangerous (dangerous) than being an instructor.
- I prefer going caving. In my opinion, it is more exciting (exciting) than other activities.
- Fatih is a farmer and he thinks his job is very boring. He wants to have a more entertaining (entertaining) job.
- If you exercise regularly, you will feel healthier (healthy) in time.

2 Write the comparative forms of the adjectives.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| 1. interesting | <u>more/less interesting</u> | 9. experienced | <u>more/less experienced</u> |
| 2. amazing | <u>more/less amazing</u> | 10. big | <u>bigger</u> |
| 3. bad | <u>worse</u> | 11. healthy | <u>healthier</u> |
| 4. brave | <u>braver</u> | 12. boring | <u>more/less boring</u> |
| 5. fascinating | <u>more/less fascinating</u> | 13. lucky | <u>luckier</u> |
| 6. far | <u>farther/further</u> | 14. good | <u>better</u> |
| 7. nervous | <u>more/less nervous</u> | 15. short | <u>shorter</u> |
| 8. easy | <u>easier</u> | 16. exciting | <u>more/less exciting</u> |

3 Circle the mistakes in the sentences. Then correct them.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. Being a call center specialist is <u>interesting</u> than being a teacher. | <u>more interesting</u> |
| 2. Exploring mysterious places is <u>more amazing</u> than other activities. | <u>amazing</u> |
| 3. Mark is more popular <u>so</u> other students in my class. | <u>than</u> |
| 4. Indoor sports are less dangerous <u>with</u> extreme sports. | <u>than</u> |
| 5. I think skydiving isn't <u>more easy</u> than scuba diving. | <u>easier</u> |
| 6. In my opinion, rock climbing is <u>risky</u> than many other sports. | <u>riskier</u> |
| 7. To me, canoeing is more <u>exciting</u> than kayaking. | <u>exciting</u> |
| 8. Fire fighters have a <u>more riskier</u> job than teachers. | <u>riskier</u> |
| 9. Sally thinks hang-gliding is <u>challenging</u> than skate-boarding. | <u>more challenging</u> |
| 10. Rafting is more <u>dangerous</u> than other extreme sports. | <u>dangerous</u> |

GRAMMAR TEST

1-6 : For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks according to the passage below.

Selin and Buse are buddies. They get on well with each other (1) _____ they share the same interests. They usually (2) _____ spending time together. Both are fond of extreme sports, but they (3) _____ go skydiving than other extreme sports. They think it is (4) _____. Selin wants to be a teacher, but Buse would rather (5) _____ a police officer. Buse thinks being a teacher is (6) _____ than being a police officer.

1.

A) but	B) so
<input checked="" type="radio"/> C) because	D) and
2.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) prefer	B) doesn't prefer
C) would rather	D) prefers
3.

A) prefers	B) prefer
C) would	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) would rather
4.

A) amusinger	B) amusing
C) more amusinger	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) more amusing
5.

<input checked="" type="radio"/> A) be	B) been
C) to be	D) being
6.

A) boring	B) more boringer
<input checked="" type="radio"/> C) boringer	D) more boring


7 – 20 : For these questions, choose the correct options to fill in the blanks.

7. Ceyda is fond of extreme sports, but she usually _____ going caving to rafting. She thinks it is more entertaining.

A) would rather	B) would
C) prefer	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) prefers
8. Mike and Dorothy _____ try paragliding.

A) prefers	<input checked="" type="radio"/> B) would rather
C) prefer	D) don't prefer
9. Being a coal miner is _____ than being an electrician. Working underground is very dangerous and it requires a lot of courage.

A) challenging	B) less challenging
<input checked="" type="radio"/> C) more challenging	D) challenginger
10. I _____ going skydiving with a group because it is more entertaining.

A) would rather	B) doesn't prefer
C) prefers	<input checked="" type="radio"/> D) prefer
11.  I think scuba diving is _____ than motor-racing.

A) less better	<input checked="" type="radio"/> B) more amusing
C) entertaining	D) more easier

12.



Sam

What do you _____ doing on your summer holidays?

I always work in summers so I don't have time for a vacation.



Bill

- A) would rather B) would
C) prefers D) prefer

13. **Canan**

: My father is an electrician. I think he has a dangerous job. What is your father's occupation?

Melda

: He is a farmer. To me, your father's job is _____ my father's.

- A) more risky B) more risky than
C) riskier than D) risky than

14. **Kaya**

: _____ you _____ do paragliding than hang-gliding?

Helin

: To be honest, I hate both of them. I am interested in water sports like scuba diving and rafting.

- A) Would / rather B) Do / rather
C) Do / prefer D) Would / prefer

15. I went hang-gliding with my sister last month. She was _____ me.

- A) excited than B) more excited
C) more excited than D) exciteder

16. **Lauren** : Is canoeing challenging?

Mike

: Yes, it is. Moreover, we _____ do it on rainy days because it is more exciting.

- A) would B) would rather
C) prefers D) prefer

17. Tracy is a real adventurer. She _____ going camping in summers.

- A) would rather B) doesn't prefers
C) prefer D) prefers

18.



Linda

I would rather _____ kayaking than canoeing because it is more challenging.

- A) go B) goes
C) going D) to go

19. To me, caving is _____ than many other sports.

- A) less interestinger
B) interesting
C) more interesting
D) more interestinger

20. Being a teacher seems _____ than any other jobs. However, it is not easy as it seems. Standing up all day long is very tiring.

- A) more easy B) more easier
C) easy D) easier

READING

An Adventurous Teacher : David Nicholson

David Nicholson is a high school teacher, and he is very popular in his school. His students find his lessons more interesting than other teachers' lessons. David's job is tiring, but he loves his students. Apart from being a teacher, David is a real adventurer. He is keen on different extreme sports. Mountain biking, rock climbing and skydiving are his favourites. David's students think he is a superhero. He tells his students that extreme sports require lots of courage, but anybody can try these sports.

David is a member of skydiving club. He goes there at the weekend. He prefers a different place for skydiving every summer.

He usually goes skydiving with a group, but sometimes he would rather jump individually. As a skydiver, he always checks all the necessary equipment for his own safety. He thinks the feeling of free fall is the best part of skydiving.



- 1. According to the text above, there IS NO information about David's _____ .**
 - A) thoughts about skydiving
 - B) profession
 - C) interests
 - D) age and family
- 2. Which question IS NOT answered in the text?**
 - A) What is his occupation?
 - B) What is his job like?
 - C) What does his students think about him?
 - D) What does he need for skydiving?
- 3. Which option is CORRECT according to the text?**
 - A) He thinks his job is boring.
 - B) He doesn't like taking risks.
 - C) He thinks extreme sports require bravery.
 - D) He goes skydiving in winter.

1.

Look at the brochures below and complete the sentence according to them.

SKYDIVING

- Are you an adrenaline lover?
- What about going skydiving together?

Date : 12th March

- ◀ £40 for each person
- ◀ All-inclusive hotel
- ◀ Skydiving equipment : €20

CAVING

- Are you an adventurer?
- Do you want to explore mysterious places?

Why don't you join us?

Date: 19th April

- ◀ £40 for each person
- ◀ Catering and accommodation
- ◀ Equipment included

Derrick is fond of extreme sports. He goes mountain biking and paragliding every year. He wants to try a different sport, but he doesn't have much money. He has two options and he prefers going caving because

_____.

- A) he doesn't like all-inclusive hotels
- B) it is more expensive than skydiving
- C) he won't pay for the equipment
- D) it offers accommodation

2.



Extreme sports are popular all over the world. I like extreme sports because they are exciting and challenging. I tried kayaking last summer and I enjoyed it. Then, I experienced different extreme sports such as rafting, hang-gliding and skydiving. They are all fascinating, but I enjoy doing acrobatic movements in the sky and watching wonderful views over the land more than anything. I think it is more amusing than all other sports. I also record videos during the free fall.

What is Nick's favorite extreme sport?

- A) Skydiving
- B) Kayaking
- C) Hang-gliding
- D) Paragliding

3. An extreme sports complex conducted a survey about people's opinions on extreme sports. Here are four answers from the survey.

LAURA : I love extreme sports. I would rather go rock climbing because it is more exciting than others. I go rock climbing with my friends about five times a year.

MERLIN : I am fond of water extreme sports. They are all amazing, but exploring the underwater world is the best.

MELISA : I am afraid of extreme sports. I think they are too risky and dangerous to try, so I usually prefer doing indoor activities.

CAROL : I am a real adventurer. I love trying challenging activities like rafting, bungee jumping and caving.

Which of the following IS NOT correct according to the answers?

- A) Carol is a fearless person.
- B) Merlin prefers going scuba diving.
- C) Laura would rather not go rock climbing alone.
- D) Melisa is a real adventurer.

4. My name is David. I prefer rafting to other extreme sports. I know it requires lots of courage, but I'm crazy about it.

Which of the following equipment IS NOT related to David's favourite sport?

A)



B)



C)



D)



5.



Tom : Hi everyone! Today our guest is Martin Smith.
_____?

Martin : Well, I love most of them, but canoeing is the best.

Tom : _____?

Martin : Because it is more entertaining than other sports.

Tom : _____?

Martin : A helmet, a paddle, a dry suit and a wet-suit.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT Tom ask Martin?

- A) What do you need for it
- B) What's your favorite extreme sport
- C) Why do you prefer it
- D) Where do you usually go canoeing

6.



Asim

What would you rather do on your summer holidays?

I would rather go rock climbing because _____.



Robby

Which option completes the dialogue?

- A) it is more boring than many other activities
- B) I like indoor sports more than outdoor sports
- C) to me, it is disappointing
- D) it is more challenging and exciting than other sports

7. **Elif** : Are you interested in skateboarding?

Nick : No, not really. I find it boring. I'm keen on paragliding.

Elif : Paragliding? I tried paragliding last month, but _____. I don't want to try it again.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the dialogue?

- A) it was disappointing
- B) it was magnificent
- C) I didn't enjoy it
- D) I found it too difficult

8.



On my summer holidays, I prefer doing extreme sports with my buddies. We prefer doing outdoor activities together. We usually go skydiving and mountain biking as a group. You can do these sports individually, but I prefer doing them with my friends. I prefer going kayaking alone because my friends don't like it.

Which of the following pictures shows an extreme sport that both Melike and her friends like?



NARTEST

9. Two researchers asked some teenagers about their job preferences yesterday. Look at the results.

Professions	Number of teens
Electrician	5
Doctor	35
Teacher	10
Fighter Pilot	20
Scientist	40

Which of the following is CORRECT according to the table?

- A) Most teenagers prefer being an electrician.
- B) Being a scientist is less popular than being a teacher among teenagers.
- C) Nearly half of them would rather be a fighter pilot.
- D) More teens prefer being a scientist to being a doctor.

10.

Lilly's interests

- ✓ adventures
- ✓ exploring new places
- ✓ outdoor sports

Carol's interests

- ✓ mysterious places
- ✓ adrenaline
- ✓ surviving in nature

Lilly and Carol want to do an extreme sport together. Look at the lists of their interests above.

Which picture shows an extreme sport that both Lilly and Carol will enjoy doing?

A)



B)



C)



D)



TOURISM

*"Traveling – it leaves you speechless, then turns you into a storyteller."
İbni Battuta*



We are going to learn :

- 📌 describing places
- 📌 expressing preferences
- 📌 giving explanations and reasons
- 📌 making simple comparisons
- 📌 talking about experiences

UNIT 7

UNIT 7 TOURISM

Common Expressions

I have been to the authentic city, Şanlıurfa.

The historical places of the city are worth seeing.

It is one of the best places to relax.

Where have you been to in Turkey?

In fact, it is usually warm and sunny in Rome.

Have you ever gone abroad?

Have you ever been to Paris?

I have been to Side before.

I have never seen such a splendid place.

What are the tourist attractions in the city?

What do you think about Barcelona?

How can I go to Ibiza?

What is the weather like in Santorini?

I would rather visit historic sites.

I think / guess/ believe / suppose it is exciting.

To me, it sounds fascinating.

Did you enjoy your trip?

It was incredible.

It's truly an ancient city.

Which one do you prefer? A historic site or the seaside?

What did you do there?

Where did you stay?

How long did you stay there?

What type of holiday do you prefer?

Otantik şehir Şanlıurfa'da bulundum.

Şehrin tarihi yerleri görmeye değer.

Rahatlamak için en iyi yerlerden biri.

Türkiye'de nereye gittin?

Doğrusu, Roma genellikle ılık ve güneşlidir.

Hiç yurt dışına gittin mi?

Daha önce hiç Paris'de bulundun mu?

Daha önce Side'de bulundum.

Böyle olağan üstü bir yeri daha önce hiç görmedim.

Şehirdeki turistik yerler neler?

Barcelona hakkında ne düşünüyorsun?

Ibiza'ya nasıl gidebilirim?

Sarantorini'de hava nasıl?

Tarihi yerleri gezmeyi tercih ederim.

Bence o heyecan verici.

Bana göre kulağa harika geliyor.

Gezini sevdim mi?

O inanılmazdı.

O gerçekten antik bir şehir.

Hangisini tercih edersin? Tarihi bir yer mi deniz kenarı mı?

Orada ne yaptın?

Nerede kaldın?

Orada ne kadar kaldın?

Ne tür tatil tercih edersin?



VOCABULARY 1

TOURIST ATTRACTIONS

square	→	meydan
monument	→	anıt
historic site	→	tarihi yer
bridge	→	köprü
historical bridge	→	tarihi köprü
ancient place	→	antik yer
ancient city	→	antik şehir
ancient settlement	→	antik yerleşim yeri
countryside	→	kırsal bölge
rural place	→	kırsal yer
urban place	→	kentsel yer
mosque	→	camii
archaeological site	→	arkeolojik kazı alanı

castle	→	kale
museum	→	müze
palace	→	saray
lake	→	göl
fountain	→	çeşme
tomb	→	mezar
caravansary	→	kervansaray
Turkish bath	→	hamam
shrine	→	türbe
seaside	→	deniz kenarı
national park	→	milli park
cave	→	mağara

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

1. Many kings and queens lived in this palace (lacpae) in history.
2. Statue of Liberty is a famous monument (umemonnt) in the world.
3. There is a beautiful fountain (ntafouin) near my house.
4. Let's go to the countryside (ntrysicoude) to get some fresh air.
5. There are many historic mosques (qumoses) in Istanbul.
6. The building over there is an old shrine (inshre).
7. It's not safe to swim in a lake (klae).
8. I'm interested in visiting historical castles (tleass).
9. There are many historical bridges (rsgibde) in the city.
10. Last summer, I visited Serengeti national park (atnloina rakp) with my buddies.

2 Read the definitions below to solve the puzzle.



Across

1. a large stone structure or underground room where someone, especially an important person, is buried
5. an open and typically four-sided area surrounded by buildings in a village, town or city
6. a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff or mountain
7. a building for Islamic religious activities and worship

Down

2. a building where objects of historical, scientific, or artistic interest are kept
3. a large house that is the official home of a king, queen, or other person of high social rank
4. a large area of water surrounded by land
8. a place for worship that is holy because of a connection with a holy person or object

3 Write each word under the correct picture.

- seaside
- bridge
- palace

- fountain
- national park
- archeological site



seaside



national park



fountain



palace



archeological site



bridge

VOCABULARY 2

ADJECTIVES

modern	modern, çağa uygun	perfect	mükemmel
historic	tarihsel	warm	ılık
historical	tarihi	important	önemli
rural	kırsal	splendid	olağan üstü / muhteşem
urban	kentsel	cultural	kültürel
ancient	antik	charming	çekici
authentic	otantik, gerçek	cheap	ucuz
inner	iç, içteki	common	yaygın
mystic	gizemli	natural	doğal
worldwide	dünya çapında	unforgettable	unutulmaz
lovely	sevimli, güzel	old-fashioned	modası geçmiş / eski
attractive	çekici	antique	antik
incredible	inanılmaz	living	canlı
unbelievable	inanılmaz		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Write the words below under the pictures.

antique

modern

rural

urban

historic

cultural

1.



antique

2.



modern

3.



urban

4.



historic

5.



rural

6.



cultural

2

Fill in the blanks with the words below.

warm

cheap

historical

worldwide

old-fashioned

lovely

1. I prefer historical places. Taj Mahal is my favorite destination.
2. There is a worldwide carnival in Rio, Brazil every year. It attracts many tourists from different countries.
3. You can find cheap accommodation in Safranbolu. You don't need to stay at an expensive hotel.
4. I usually like warm climates.
5. This dress is too old-fashioned for me to wear. I prefer trendy clothes.
6. This park is such a lovely place. I feel very relaxed here.

3

Find and circle the 8 words in the word-search puzzle.

R	A	A	U	T	H	E	N	T	I	C	O	B	K	S	G	H	I	U	N
X	L	X	L	U	T	I	A	A	E	S	A	I	A	N	E	E	I	I	N
G	S	C	F	M	W	G	C	Y	G	S	H	N	O	K	M	U	Z	V	K
J	V	Z	L	Z	V	I	W	R	B	O	M	C	R	B	P	N	H	M	W
K	Q	R	U	R	N	G	I	D	P	G	R	R	F	F	E	F	T	Q	L
L	X	E	M	S	S	H	J	G	R	T	U	E	M	T	R	O	X	C	Z
G	E	W	F	H	I	L	O	B	K	W	O	D	B	Z	F	R	V	Z	V
V	H	N	S	O	U	T	H	E	R	N	H	I	Z	B	E	G	Y	F	W
Z	Y	K	E	E	G	U	Z	V	V	L	V	B	J	C	C	E	L	I	R
P	L	I	M	P	O	R	T	A	N	T	E	L	T	Q	T	T	A	J	S
C	Z	Q	W	O	U	G	O	V	Q	Z	D	E	E	D	L	T	X	D	D
U	A	I	L	S	R	I	B	N	W	D	V	L	K	J	P	A	O	I	S
L	J	Z	E	R	F	N	U	T	Y	P	B	D	F	L	U	B	J	L	W
D	B	F	R	F	X	S	M	C	H	A	R	M	I	N	G	L	E	P	Q
V	Y	P	L	E	S	A	Y	Q	M	X	V	H	L	Y	C	E	A	G	U
U	M	V	S	D	S	P	L	E	N	D	I	D	M	Y	A	Q	Q	S	G

VOCABULARY 3

VERBS

try	→	denemek	depart	→	ayrılmak
preserve	→	korumak	spend	→	harcamak
touch	→	dokunmak	attract	→	ilgi çekmek
travel	→	seyahat etmek	form	→	oluşturmak
stay	→	kalmak	surround	→	kuşatmak/etrafını çevirmek
direct	→	yönünü çevirmek	believe	→	inanmak
join	→	katılmak	refresh	→	yenilemek / yenilenmek
inform	→	bilgilendirmek			

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Order the letters to find the words in the brackets. Then complete the sentences.

1. This peninsula attracts (tracatts) millions of tourists every year.
2. I believe (lievbee) Rome is an interesting city.
3. Who is going to inform (foinrm) us about the details of the tour?
4. I'm sorry, but I can't join (ijon) the party.
5. My parents would rather travel (vetral) to Asian countries.
6. The passengers tried to form (rfom) a line at the airport, but it was impossible.
7. Jack didn't stay (asty) at a bungalow on his last holiday.
8. I want to try (ytr) different traditional dishes in the world.

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

1. Our train **believed** / **departed** at half past seven.
2. Can you **inform** / **preserve** me about your holiday offers?
3. Rome is full of historic sites. If you want to **touch** / **guess** the living history, you should go there.
4. I enjoy **spending** / **forming** time with my family.
5. I need to go to the countryside to relax and **surround** / **refresh**.
6. I **believe** / **prefer** rural places are more exciting than urban places.

VOCABULARY 4

NOUNS

history	→	tarih	belief	→	inanç
island	→	ada	scenery	→	manzara
trip	→	gezi	boat	→	bot
souvenir	→	hatıra	guesthouse	→	misafirhane
abroad	→	yurt dışı	hotel	→	otel
beauty	→	güzellik	symbol	→	sembol
route	→	rota	heritage	→	miras
migration	→	göç	resort	→	tatil yeri
wildebeest	→	antilop	heaven	→	cennet, cennet gibi güzel yer
eco-system	→	ekosistem	bungalow	→	tek katlı tahta ev / kır evi
memory	→	anı	safari	→	vahşi yaşam alanına düzenlenen gezi
price	→	fiyat	landscape	→	manzara
inscription	→	yazıt	capital	→	başkent
climate	→	iklim	peninsula	→	yarımada
building	→	bina	landmark	→	bir kentin sembolü haline gelen yer veya yapı
relaxation	→	rahatlama			
pleasure	→	zevk			
freedom	→	özgürlük			
duty	→	görev			
meeting	→	buluşma, toplantı			
custom	→	gelenek			

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. I love the **atmosphere** / **budget** in this village. It's so relaxing.
2. You can only reach the **custom** / **peninsula** by boat.
3. I prefer staying at a **scenery** / **guesthouse** when I go on holiday.
4. Beach holidays are great for **relaxation** / **inscriptions**.
5. Helen bought some beautiful **souvenirs** / **resorts** from Spain.
6. This region has a tropical **climate** / **wildebeest**.
7. We had a long and tiring **heaven** / **journey** last week.
8. Look at the **scenery** / **boat** of the mountain. It's splendid.

2 Complete the sentences with the words below.

○ guesthouse

○ climate

○ prices

○ history

○ buildings

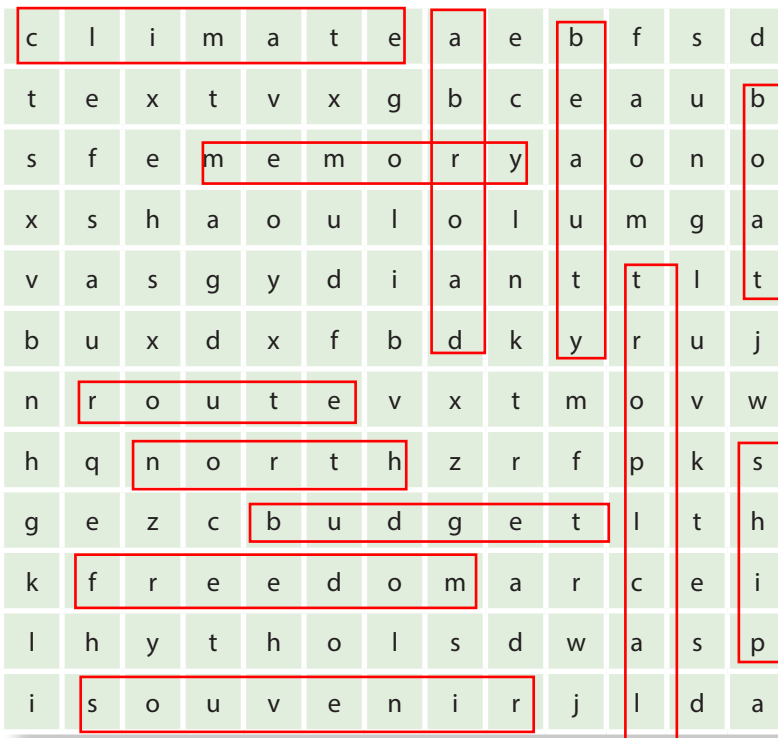
○ scenery

○ capital

○ trip

1. Some hotel prices are too high in Tokyo.
2. Our tour guide informed us about the history of the city.
3. To me, historic buildings are more attractive.
4. The scenery of this peninsula is magnificent.
5. The climate of this region is usually warm and sunny.
6. I stayed at a guesthouse for five days in Chesterfield.
7. They tasted different traditional dishes on their trip.
8. I have been to the Lizbon, the capital of Portugal.

3 Find and circle the 12 words in the word-search puzzle. Then write them next to the numbers.



1. climate
2. abroad
3. memory
4. beauty
5. boat
6. tropical
7. route
8. ship
9. north
10. budget
11. souvenir
12. freedom

VOCABULARY 5



NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

historical architecture	→	tarihi mimari
modern architecture	→	modern mimari
all-inclusive hotel	→	her şey dahil otel
bed and breakfast hotel	→	sadece yatak ve kahvaltı veren otel
five-star hotel	→	5 yıldızlı otel
living history	→	yaşayan tarih
tourist attraction	→	turistik yer
cruise holiday	→	gemi tatili
tourist destination	→	turistik yer
cultural holiday	→	kültürel tatil
cultural wealth	→	kültürel miras
natural beauty	→	doğal güzellik
tour guide	→	tur rehberi
open area	→	açık alan
summer vacation	→	yaz tatili
fried-fish sandwich	→	ekmek arası balık
boutique hotel	→	butik otel



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the phrases below.

tour guide

all-inclusive hotels

tourist attractions

fried-fish sandwich

modern architecture

summer vacation

- I had my last **summer vacation** in Antalya. It was very relaxing.
- I ate a delicious **fried-fish sandwich** in Eminönü yesterday.
- Jane always prefers **all-inclusive hotels** to guesthouses.
- Jack is a **tour guide**. He speaks four languages.
- They aren't interested in **modern architecture**. They prefer visiting historic sites.
- London has world-famous **tourist attractions** like Big Ben and Buckingham Palace.

2

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. tourist | 5 _____ | a. wealth | 7. summer | 11 _____ | g. sandwich |
| 2. boutique | 1 _____ | b. destination | 8. natural | 7/9 _____ | h. vacation |
| 3. living | 6 _____ | c. area | 9. cruise | 2/12 _____ | i. hotel |
| 4. historical | 3 _____ | d. history | 10. tour | 10 _____ | j. guide |
| 5. cultural | 2 / 12 _____ | e. hotel | 11. fried-fish | 7/9 _____ | k. holiday |
| 6. open | 4 _____ | f. architecture | 12. five-star | 8 _____ | l. beauty |

3

Write the phrases under the pictures.

 tour guide cruise holiday modern architecture living history open area all-inclusive hotel natural beauty boutique hotel

1.



natural beauty

2.



cruise holiday

3.



living history

4.



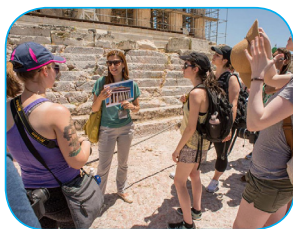
all-inclusive hotel

5.



modern architecture

6.



tour guide

7.



boutique hotel

8.



open area

4

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. My favorite tourist **attraction** / **heritage** is Machu Pichu.
2. Aigai is an **ancient** / **occupied** settlement in Manisa, Turkey. Its history dates back to 2000 B.C.
3. To me, historical architecture is more fascinating than **modern** / **rural** architecture.
4. When I went to Norway for my summer vacation, I stayed in a **guesthouse** / **monument**.
5. Linda likes travelling by ship, so she always goes on a **cruise** / **cultural** holiday in summer.
6. Our **tourist destination** / **tour guide** gave us some information about the history of Serengeti.
7. Last summer, we went to Brazil and **attended** / **preserved** the Rio Carnival.
8. Melisa is **released from** / **interested in** historic sites. She wants to visit an ancient city.
9. I prefer **all-inclusive** / **natural** hotels because they are very comfortable.
10. We didn't have any idea about the **price** / **location** of the hotel, but it wasn't too expensive.

5

Write the words under the pictures.

 square lake ceremony souvenir fountain natural beauty tomb landmark

1.



lake

2.



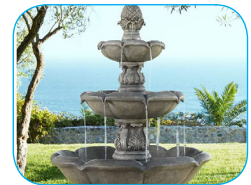
square

3.



natural beauty

4.



fountain

5.



tomb

6.



souvenir

7.



ceremony

8.



landmark

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-14 : For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

- In Nicosia, it is easy to find _____. There are so many all-inclusive hotels.
A) transportation B) attraction
 C) accommodation D) ancient place
- With its castles, monuments, bridges, fountains and museums; Rize offers you an incredible _____.
A) rural place
B) modern architecture
 C) historical holiday
D) cruise holiday
- Rome is such a lovely place. I enjoy _____ my holiday there.
 A) spending B) departing
C) preserving D) attracting
- I don't like _____ places because they are crowded and noisy.
A) common B) urban
C) mystic D) splendid
- The _____ is usually sunny and warm here. It is a beautiful place for relaxation.
A) ceremony B) budget
 C) weather D) route
- Jasmine always buys a _____ for me when she goes abroad.
A) wildebeest B) heritage
C) migration D) souvenir
- The _____ of the valley from top of the mountain is incredible.
 A) landscape B) climate
C) resort D) memory
- The cultural wealth of this city _____ many tourists across the world.
A) touches B) surrounds
C) preserves D) attracts
- I usually prefer _____ holidays because I enjoy travelling by ship.
A) living history B) cultural
 C) cruise D) guesthouse
- Burj Khalifa is a world-famous _____ in Dubai. It's one of the tallest buildings in the world.
 A) landmark B) caravansary
C) inscription D) province

11. I think beach holidays are great for _____ .

- A) duties
B) relaxation
C) safari
D) customs

12. I went to Phuket Island last year. I stayed at a _____ .

- A) belief
B) bungalow
C) symbol
D) migration

13. There are different _____ choices here, but travelling by boat is the most popular way.

- A) transportation
B) atmosphere
C) architecture
D) rock

14. London is the _____ of England.

- A) capital
B) abroad
C) mosque
D) shrine

15. Reyna is fond of historic sites such as shrines, mosques, monuments and tombs.

Which of the following pictures DOES NOT show a place that Reyna would rather go for her holiday?

A)



B)



C)



D)



16. Tourist Attractions

- Squares
- Mosques
- Museums

Which option IS NOT suitable to add to the list?

- A) Fountains
B) Souvenirs
C) Archaeological sites
D) Castles

17. I don't prefer living in an urban place because it's splendid. I'd rather live in the countryside because it's charming to be close to nature.

Which underlined word is ODD?

- A) urban
B) splendid
C) countryside
D) charming

18. Look at the view! It's absolutely _____ . I want to come back here next week.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) lovely
B) old-fashioned
C) perfect
D) wonderful

19. A king usually lives in a journey.

The underlined word is WRONG. Chose the best word to replace with it.

- A) palace
B) shrine
C) budget
D) route

20.

_____ : five-star hotels and bamboo bungalows
_____ : boats, planes

Choose the best option to complete the gaps.

- A) price / eco-system
B) freedom / pleasure
C) accommodation / transportation
D) scenery / heaven

GRAMMAR 1

DESCRIBING PLACES

Simple Past Tense

Was / Were

Affirmative Form

I He She It	was	in the capital	last month.
We You They	were	on a summer vacation	two weeks ago.

Negative Form

I He She It	wasn't	in the capital	last month.
We You They	weren't	on a summer vacation	two weeks ago.

Question Form

Was	I he she it	in the capital	last month?
Were	we you they	on a summer vacation	two weeks ago?

Short Answers

Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.
Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't.
Yes, she was. / No, she wasn't.
Yes, it was. / No, it wasn't.

Yes, we were. / No, we weren't.
Yes, you were. / No, you weren't.
Yes, they were. / No, they weren't.

EXERCISE

Complete the sentences with "was" or "were".

1. The scenery of the city was incredible.
2. Where were you last summer?
3. Judy and her father were in Spain one month ago.
4. Melisa was with her brother yesterday. They were in a shopping centre.
5. It was rainy in the capital last weekend.



REGULAR / IRREGULAR VERBS

- We use the simple tense past to talk about an action that started and finished at a specific time in the past.
- We put **'-ed, '-d' or '-ied'** at the end of regular verbs in the simple past tense. However, these rules do not apply to irregular verbs. Look at the following examples.

Regular Verbs

watch	-	watched
visit	-	visited
try	-	tried
preserve	-	preserved
touch	-	touched
travel	-	travelled
join	-	joined
inform	-	informed

Irregular Verbs

eat	-	ate
feed	-	fed
buy	-	bought
take	-	took
break	-	broke
do	-	did
forget	-	forgot
go	-	went



Affirmative Form

I	visited	an authentic city	a week ago. last summer. yesterday.
We You They He She It			
	saw		



Negative Form

I	didn't	visit	an authentic city	a week ago. last summer. yesterday.
We You They He She It				
		see		



Question Form

Did	I we you they he she it	visit	an authentic city	a week ago? last summer? yesterday?
		see		



Short Answers

Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.	Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.
Yes, you did. / No, you didn't.	Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.
Yes, we did. / No, we didn't.	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
	Yes, it did. / No, it didn't.

Time expressions:

last night/week/month/year/summer, yesterday, the day before yesterday, ago, in 2010 ... etc.



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with 'was' or 'were'.

- The historic monuments of the city were amazing.
- Sally was with her family in Italy last summer.
- We were tired after the long journey.
- The weather was extremely hot and sunny.
- The rural area was very relaxing.
- Where were you last month?
- How was your trip?
- Nelly and Dave were happier last year.

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

- I tried / try different dishes in Japan, but they didn't / weren't tasty.
- Serpil : Do / Did you enjoy your trip?
Harry : Yes, it was / were incredible.
- Isla didn't want / wanted to join a boat tour, but his friend insisted on it.
- I was / were in Alaçatı with my friends. We bought / buyed lots of souvenirs for our families.
- The weather was / were sunny and warm in Prague. I don't / didn't want to go back home.
- Our accommodation weren't / wasn't comfortable.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

3

Use the verbs in the brackets to complete the sentences in the correct forms of **the simple past tense**.

- What did you do (do) on your last summer vacation?
- They went (go) to a historic province in Turkey.
- Last month, she travelled (travel) to Paris to do some shopping.
- We visited (visit) Serengeti National Park last summer.
- How was (be) your journey?
- We explored (explore) incredible places in the region during our holiday.
- Where did you stay (stay) in Prag?
- We visited two old castles near the city. They were (be) quite interesting.

GRAMMAR 2

DESCRIBING PLACES

Expressing Preferences / Giving Explanations and Reasons

When we talk about our preferences we use 'prefer' and 'would rather'.

Affirmative Form

I We You They	prefer	urban places	to	rural places.
He She It	prefers	urban places	to	rural places.

I We You They He She It	would rather	visit historic sites	than	go to the seaside.
---	--------------	----------------------	------	--------------------

Negative Form

I We You They	don't prefer	museums	to art galleries.
He She It	doesn't prefer	museums	to art galleries.

I We You They He She It	would rather not	stay at a guesthouse	than	stay at a hotel.
---	------------------	----------------------	------	------------------

Question Form

Do	I we you they	prefer	visiting Rome	to	Paris?
Does	he she it	prefer	visiting Rome	to	Paris?
Would	I we you they	rather	visit museums	than	historical bridges?
Would	he she it	rather	visit museums	than	historical bridges?

Short Answers

Yes, I do. / No, I don't. Yes, you do. / No, you don't. Yes, we do. / No, we don't. Yes, they do. / No, they don't.	Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't. Yes, you would. / No, you wouldn't. Yes, we would. / No, we wouldn't. Yes, they would. / No, they wouldn't.
Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't. Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't. Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't.	Yes, he would. / No, he wouldn't. Yes, she would. / No, she wouldn't. Yes, it would. / No, it wouldn't.



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of 'prefer' or 'would rather'.

1. Would you rather go on a cruise holiday?
2. Ahmet would rather live in a rural place than an urban place.
3. Does Harry prefer travelling with a group?
4. Nancy prefers staying in all-inclusive hotels to bed and breakfast hotels.
5. I would rather visit ancient sites because they are more interesting.
6. We usually prefer travelling to hot countries.
7. Linda doesn't prefer visiting old castles and palaces because she thinks they are boring.
8. Oliver and Samuel would rather visit ancient cities because they're not interested in history.
9. They would rather stay in boutique hotels than all-inclusive hotels because they are cheaper.
10. Kevin and I prefer eating fried-fish when we go to Eminönü.
11. What kind of places do you prefer visiting on your vacation?
12. We would rather not (not) spend time with my brother because we don't like each other.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. Do / Does Jessica and Bill prefer / prefers visiting authentic places?
2. They would rather / prefer spend time together.
3. Mike prefers / would rather visit castles than fountains.
4. Do / Does your brother prefer / prefers eating fried fish sandwiches?
5. He prefer / would rather go to the countryside than go to the seaside, but he doesn't prefer / prefers going somewhere as a group. He likes doing everything individually.
6. Ramsey : Where does Helen prefer / prefers for her summer vacation?
Aaron : She prefers / prefer countryside because she likes being in the nature.
7. We don't prefer / would rather not spend too much money on accommodation.
8. I would rather / prefer visiting natural beauties to historic sites.

GRAMMAR 3

Giving Explanations and Reasons

We use 'in my opinion', 'to me', 'I suppose', 'I guess', 'I believe' to express our ideas on something.

Study the sentences below.

- What do you think about London?
 - To me / In my opinion, it is a lovely city.
 - I think / believe / suppose / guess it is a wonderful place to visit.
- What does she think about Bozcaada?
 - In her opinion / To her, it is fascinating.
 - She thinks / guesses / supposes / believes the scenery of Bozcaada is incredible.
- What does he think about Istanbul?
 - To him / in his opinion, it is a magnificent city.
 - He thinks / guesses / supposes / believes the fried-fish sandwich was unforgettable.
- What do they think about rural places?
 - They think / guess / suppose / believe they are worth seeing.
 - In their opinion / To them, urban places are more fascinating.



EXERCISES

1

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

1. **In my opinion** / I guesses Barcelona is a magnificent city.
2. What **does / do** she **think / thinks** about historical places?
3. **In her opinion** / she think the seaside is more exciting than historical places.
4. **To her / To him**, safari tours are amazing. She joins a safari tour once a year.
5. **In they opinion** / **In their opinion**, cultural holidays are extremely tiring.
6. **I believe** / I supposes Çanakkale is a truly fascinating city.
7. **In her opinion** / She suppose big cities aren't good places for living a peaceful life.

2

Correct the mistakes in each sentence.

1. In his **guess**, modern architecture is more interesting than historical places.
opinion
2. I **believes** the hotel prices are more expensive in this city.
believe
3. In **they** opinion, all-inclusive resorts are more comfortable than guesthouses.
their
4. She **think** living in a countryside is more amusing than living in an urban place.
thinks
5. In his **believe**, Hatay has more cultural attractions than most of the provinces in Turkey.
opinion
6. To **my** you should definitely visit Phalesis to see its natural beauty.
me

GRAMMAR 4

Making Comparisons

- We use adjectives to make comparisons. Check **Unit 6 Grammar 2** for the rules of comparative adjectives.
- We sometimes use some phrases to express our opinions with comparative forms. Some of these phrases are 'To me, I think / I believe/suppose, In my opinion, ... etc.

Study the following sentences.

- In my opinion, modern architecture is more beautiful than historical architecture.
- To me, all-inclusive hotels are more fascinating than bed and breakfast hotels.
- She thinks visiting ancient settlements is more exciting than visiting castles.
- I think Trabzon is cheaper than Istanbul.
- She believes this place is more charming than any other tourist attractions.

EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the comparative forms of the adjectives given in the parenthesis.

1. Bodrum has more attractive (attractive) places than Konya.
2. Sarah thinks living in a city isn't more interesting (interesting) than living in the countryside.
3. Reece thinks, all-inclusive hotels are more comfortable (comfortable) than guesthouses.
4. In my opinion, going on a cruise holiday is less boring (boring) than going on a cultural holiday. I'm not very keen on cultural holidays.
5. To me, travelling by boat is more amusing (amusing) than travelling by plane.
6. I think you should stay at a guesthouse because it's cheaper (cheap).
7. Our new tour guide is more experienced (experienced) than the last tour guide.
8. I believe London is more incredible (incredible) than New York.

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

1. To her / She believe, London is less interesting than Istanbul.
2. In my opinion / We thinks rural places are relaxing.
3. I suppose Spain is interesting / more interesting than Italy.
4. Marie don't / doesn't think cultural holidays are tiring.
5. Emma thinks cities are more noisy / noisier than rural places.
6. My vacation in Italy was more incredible than / then the vacation in France.

GRAMMAR 5

TALKING ABOUT EXPERIENCES

Present Perfect Tense

- We use the present perfect to show a link between the past and the present.
- We use this tense for different reasons.
- For example, we use the present perfect to describe an action that started in the past and continues in the present. We also use this tense to talk about our experiences. We usually use **'ever, never'** when we ask and answer questions about experiences.

Example: **A:** Have you ever been to Russia?

B: No, I have never been there.

Affirmative Form

I We You They	have	been to visited	the authentic city, Urfa.
He She It	has		

Question Form

Have	I we you they	been to visited	the authentic city, Urfa?
Has	he she it		

Negative Form

I We You They	haven't	been to visited	the authentic city, Urfa
He She It	hasn't		

Short Answers

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
 Yes, we have. / No, we haven't.
 Yes, you have. / No, you haven't.
 Yes, they have. / No, they haven't.
 Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.
 Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.
 Yes, it has. / No, it hasn't.

Focus on the bold words. They are some of the time expressions of the present perfect.

- ✿ Have you **ever** been to Köln?
-Yes, I have.
-No, I haven't
-I have been to Köln **before**.
-I have **never** been to Köln.
- ✿ I have **already** finished my homework so I can sleep now.
- ✿ She hasn't eaten anything **yet**. She is hungry.
- ✿ The show has **just** started. You didn't miss anything.
- ✿ They haven't seen her **for** 15 years.
- ✿ We have lived here **since** 1985.



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of **the present perfect**.

- Pinar** : **Have** _____ you ever **been** _____ (be) to Istanbul?
Philip : No, I **haven't** _____ .
- I **have** _____ never **seen** _____ (see) such a splendid place before.
- Barbaros** : Where **has** _____ she **been** _____ (be) before?
Ceren : She **has been** _____ (be) to Greece, Russia and Spain.
- Nora **hasn't visited** _____ (not visit) the most popular museums in this city yet.
- Timmy** : **Has** _____ she **finished** _____ (finish) her work?
Felicia : No, she **hasn't** _____ .
haven't stayed _____ (not stay) at a five-star hotel yet.
- We **have tasted** _____ (taste) different traditional dishes in Konya.
- Sally** : **Has** _____ she **come** _____ (come) from school?
Nick : No, she **hasn't** _____ .
- Rebecca **hasn't gone** _____ (not go) abroad yet. She is planning to go this summer.
- We **have experienced** _____ (experience) an inner journey with the mystic atmosphere of the city.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

- I **have** **haven't** never seen such a beautiful city before.
- We have **yet** **already** been to Paris before. Let's travel to a different city.
- In my opinion, this is the best place I have **ever** / **never** seen.
- Where **have** / **has** your father been so far in Germany?
- Barack is in Japan, but he hasn't tired sushi **yet** / **for**.
- I have lived in Bozcaada **since** / **for** 2010 .
- Our teacher has **before** / **just** given us a project about world's most famous landmarks.
- We have been in Turkey **for** / **already** two weeks.

GRAMMAR TEST

Answer the questions (1-5) according to the text below.

I (1) _____ in Beijing since last week. It's the capital city of China. There are lots of places to discover. I have (2) _____ visited the Great Wall, but I haven't seen Tiananmen Square (3) _____. I'm planning to go there tomorrow. I have (4) _____ some Chinese people here. They are very helpful and friendly. I have tasted some traditional dishes here, but I want to explore more. (5) _____, Beijing is more interesting than many other cities in the world.

1.

- A) am
B) have been
C) been
D) has been

2.

- A) for
B) already
C) before
D) since

3.

- A) yesterday
B) ago
C) never
D) yet

4.

- A) metted
B) meeting
C) met
D) meet

5.

- A) In my opinion
B) To her
C) They suppose
D) We think

6-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

6. Yuka _____ big cities are crowded and noisy.

- A) think
B) thinking
C) have thought
D) thinks

7. This peninsula is the most incredible place I have ever _____.

- A) seen
B) saw
C) see
D) sees

8.



Dudley

_____ you _____ been to Side?



Vernon

No, I haven't.

- A) Have / never
B) Has / never
C) Has / ever
D) Have / ever

9. In our opinion, ancient settlements are _____ modern buildings.

- A) magnificent than
B) more magnificent than
C) more magnificent
D) magnificienter

10. **Harry:** What _____ she _____ about Martyr's Memorial?

Ron : In her opinion, it's unbelievable.

- A) do / think
B) does / think
C) does / thinks
D) do / thinks

11.



Rose

I _____ to Singapore last summer. It _____ a magnificent place.

- A) have gone / is B) go / were
 C) went / was D) was / was

12. Last month, I _____ to Shanghai. I _____ some nice souvenirs for my family there.

- A) have travelled / buy
 B) has travelled / bought
 C) travelled / bought
 D) travelled / buyed

13. _____, Bremen is one of the best places I have ever _____.

- A) I think / visit
 B) To me / visited
 C) I believe / visiting
 D) In me opinion / visited

14. When she went to Konya, Barbara _____ the worldwide ceremony Şebi-Arus.

- A) attending B) attend
 C) attended D) attends

15. **Betty** : Have you ever travelled with a group?

Marie : No, _____. I usually prefer travelling alone because it is more relaxing.

- A) I have B) I didn't have
 C) I didn't D) haven't

16. Matilda _____ never tried any traditional Japanese dishes.

- A) has B) have
 C) hasn't D) haven't

17. Marta and her husband _____ a holiday last summer.

- A) haven't had B) would rather
 C) didn't have D) prefer

18. We have lived here _____ 2009.

- A) already B) for
 C) since D) yet

19. My parents _____ tropical destinations.

- A) would rather to travel
 B) prefer travelling to
 C) did travel
 D) has travelled

20. I _____ visit a national park than a palace.

- A) would B) prefers
 C) prefer D) would rather

READING



Nick



The Living History: Adiyaman

I am interested in cultural holidays because it's fascinating to learn about the lifestyle of a place. I'm in Adiyaman for my holiday now. It's a great city in southeastern Turkey. It's famous for its cultural wealth. I've been here since last Saturday. I'm staying at a guesthouse in the city centre. My room is quite comfortable. I have already visited Derik Castle, Haydaran Rock Tombs, Cendere Bridge, and some historical mosques. I haven't seen Mount Nemrut National Park yet. There are incredible monuments and statues belong to the Kingdom of Commagene. I can't wait to explore the living history there. Adiyaman preserves many historic buildings and sites. I'm planning to see all of them. Adiyaman has a wide range of traditional dishes. I have tasted Davutpaşa Soup and Cheese Halva. Both are delicious. I think Adiyaman isn't a very expensive city. I bought some souvenirs at a local shop yesterday. They were quite cheap. I'm having a great time here. If you like cultural holidays, this place is just for you.

- 1. According to the text, there IS NO information about the _____ of the city.**
A) tourist attractions
B) local cuisine
C) location
D) climate
- 2. Which sentence is TRUE according to the text?**
A) Nick is in a different country for his holiday.
B) Nick isn't in Adiyaman at the moment.
C) Nick isn't interested in history and cultures.
D) Nick hasn't visited any places in the city yet.
- 3. We understand from the text that _____ .**
A) he doesn't like his accommodation
B) he has already returned to his country
C) he feels excited about Mount Nemrut National Park
D) he spent lots of money on the souvenirs

1.

A Safari Tour in Africa

A safari tour is such an amazing experience that you will never forget. If you want to enjoy your safari tour, you should follow some rules. First, you should wear suitable clothes. Your clothes protect you both from the heat and mosquitos. Then you should always listen to your tour guides. They will always help you. Also, you should always stay away from wild animals. Don't forget that they look fascinating, but they are wild. Finally, you shouldn't disturb them when you take photos.



If you want to have a safe and amusing safari tour, you should _____ .

- A) wear appropriate clothes
- B) be close to wild animals
- C) disturb wild animals
- D) not listen to your tour guides

2.



Kelly

I live in the countryside. I like different types of holiday. I have great plans for my next holiday. First, I am going to visit an ancient city because I am interested in old civilizations and ancient settlements. After that, I'm going to stay at an all-inclusive hotel by the sea to relax and refresh. Then I may have a cruise holiday, but I haven't planned that yet.

Where is Kelly going to start her holiday?



Answer the questions (3-4) according to the brochure below.

ADIYAMAN
It is a city of culture and ancient sites. Mount Nemrut is on the World Heritage List. The city is also famous for its local bazaars and delicious food, especially meatballs.

BALIKESİR
It's famous for Mount Ida (Kazdaği), special desserts, seafood and local bazaars. You can enjoy swimming and sunbathing at its beautiful beaches.

RİZE
Rize is famous for its natural beauties. Its most important features are: tea gardens, fish (hamsi) and a local folk dance (horon).

VAN
Van is not by the sea, but it has Turkey's biggest lake. It is one of the best places for rafting and paragliding. Local bazaars and its famous breakfast attract many local and foreign tourists.

www.travelcompany.com
+00 123 456 789

TRAVEL TO TURKEY

3. Andrew is a university student. After he sees the brochure, he decides to go to Turkey because he studies history at university. He thinks this trip will be useful for his lessons.

Which city should he go?

- A) Adiyaman B) Balikesir C) Rize D) Van

4. In all cities, a tourist can _____.

- A) enjoy extreme sports B) see a historic place C) do water sports D) taste local food

5. Complete the sentence according to the information on the website.

Home Your trip About Us Shop ITALY TRAVEL GUIDE NARTourism

How To Travel?
Around the city: Travelling by bus is cheap, but it isn't the fastest way.

Where to stay?
Choose a hotel around the places you will go, so you can walk and enjoy the streets in the city.
Try staying in the countryside.

What to do?
Explore Ancient Rome.
Enjoy the countryside.
Try different types of pasta.
Attend a traditional food festival.

When to visit?
There's really no "bad" time to visit Italy. You can enjoy Italy the whole year. Especially from April to July.


On the website, you can find information about _____.

- A) some cheaper accommodation tips B) the most appropriate months to go to Italy
 C) some activities that local people enjoy most D) the fastest way to travel to the countryside

6. **Ongun** : Safranbolu is a touristic town in the northeast of Karabük . _____ ?
Meltem : Yes, I have. In fact, I visited it last summer.
Ongun : _____ ?
Meltem : It is an incredible place to visit.
Ongun : _____ ?
Meltem : I stayed at a guesthouse.

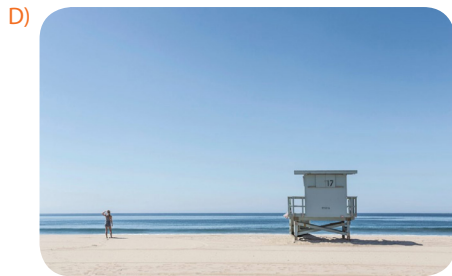
Which of the following questions DOES NOT Ongun ask Meltem?

- A) When did you visit Safranbolu
 B) Where did you stay
 C) Have you ever been to Safranbolu
 D) What do you think about Safranbolu

7.  On our last summer holiday, my family and I joined a tour. Firstly, we visited an ancient settlement. It was magnificent. Then, we saw some historical places such as castles, shrines, and fountains. After that, we went to the seaside and enjoyed the landscape. It was an incredible holiday!

Ebru

Which of the following pictures DOES NOT show a place that Ebru and her family visited?



8.



Derik

I travelled to Antalya in Turkey. I stayed at an all-inclusive hotel by the sea. It was a relaxing break for me.

I was in Rome last summer. I visited the city's most famous landmarks and tasted some traditional Italian dishes there.



Nancy

What did you do last summer?



Kenan

I went to London for my last vacation. I visited Buckingham Palace, Westminster Abbey, the iconic Big Ben and many other popular places in the city.

I had an unforgettable safari tour in Africa last summer. I want to go there again next year.



Maria

Who had a beach holiday?

- A) Derik
- B) Nancy
- C) Kenan
- D) Maria

9. **Terry** : Where did you go last summer?
Jane : I travelled to France. I stayed at a nice hotel in Paris for two weeks.
Terry : How did you travel? Did you drive there?
Jane : No, I went there by train. It was a pleasant journey for me.
Terry : Did you enjoy the food there?
Jane : Of course. French onion soup was my favourite.

Which of the following topics DO NOT they mention in the dialogue?

- A) Accommodation
- B) Local cuisine
- C) Climate
- D) Transportation

10.



Carla

I went to Phuket Island two months ago. I stayed at a bungalow near the sea. The weather was hot and sunny, so I swam every day. It was a very relaxing and refreshing atmosphere for me. I had a chance to explore lots of places nearby. It was an incredible holiday.

Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

- A) Where did she go?
- B) What did she do there?
- C) Where did she stay?
- D) How long did she stay there?

CHORES

*The price of greatness is responsibility.
Winston Churchill*



We are going to learn :

- 📌 expressing likes and dislikes
- 📌 expressing obligations
- 📌 accepting and refusing
- 📌 expressing responsibilities

UNIT 8

UNIT 8 CHORES

Common Expressions



What are your duties at school?

What are your responsibilities at home?

I find them boring.

Our teacher wants us to do our homework.

Whose responsibility is doing shopping?

It makes our life easier.

She is in charge of taking out the garbage.

Don't you think it is necessary to tidy up your room?

It is time to do the laundry.

Do you have to help your parents with the housework?

Well, I must help my parents to set the table.

We must respect elderly people

I like it when my parents give me some pocket money

I don't like it when my mom asks too many questions.

Paying the bills falls to me.

Washing the dishes is my duty/task/responsibility.

My brother has to respect my rights.

I shouldn't forget to take out the trash.

I must help my brother to do his homework.

Keep your desk tidy and neat.

Raise your hand to speak.

Arrive on time.

Don't run in the corridors.

Keep quiet.

Don't eat or drink.

Don't disturb others.

Okuldaki görevlerin neler?

Evdeki sorumlulukların neler?

Onları sıkıcı buluyorum.

Öğretmenimiz bizden ödevimizi yapmamızı ister.

Alışveriş yapmak kimin sorumluluğu?

O hayatımızı daha da kolaylaştırır.

O çöpü atmaktan sorumlu.

Odanı toplamanın gerekli olduğunu düşünmüyor musun?

Çamaşırları yıkama zamanı.

Ev işlerinde anne-babama yardım etmek zorunda mısınız?

Şey, masayı hazırlamada anne-babama yardım etmem gerekiyor.

Yaşlı insanlara saygı duymalıyız.

Anne-babamın bana harçlık vermesini seviyorum.

Annemin çok soru sormasını sevmiyorum

Faturaları ödemek bana düşüyor.

Bulaşıkları yıkamak benim görevim/sorumluluğum.

Erkek kardeşim haklarıma saygı duymak zorunda.

Çöpleri atmaya unutmamalıyım.

Erkek kardeşimin ödevlerine yardım etmem gerekiyor.

Sıranı temiz ve düzenli tut.

Konuşmak için elini kaldır.

Zamanında gel.

Koridorlarda koşma.

Sessiz ol.

Yeme veya içme.

Başkalarını rahatsız etme.

VOCABULARY 1

CHORES

take out the garbage →	çöpü dışarı çıkarmak	mop the floor →	yeri paspaslamak
set the table →	masayı hazırlamak	go shopping →	alışverişe gitmek
wash the dishes →	bulaşıkları yıkamak	water the plants →	bitkileri sulamak
dry the dishes →	bulaşıkları kurulamak	outdoor task →	dışarı işi
clean up the house →	evi temizlemek	tidy up the room →	odayı toparlamak
make the bed →	yatak düzenlemek	dust the shelves →	rafların tozunu almak
do the chores →	ev işlerini yapmak	sweep the leaves →	yaprakları süpürmek
do the ironing →	ütü yapmak	make a cake →	kek yapmak
do the laundry →	çamaşır yıkamak	pay the bills →	faturaları ödemek
empty the dishwasher →	bulaşık makinesini boşaltmak		
dust the furniture →	mobilyanın tozunu almak		
feed the pet →	evcil hayvanı beslemek		
load the dishwasher →	bulaşık makinesini doldurmak		
tidy up the toys →	oyuncakları toplamak		
take the pet for a walk →	evcil hayvanı yürüyüşe çıkarmak		
clean the windows →	pencereleri temizlemek		
vacuum the floor →	yerleri elektrik süpürgesiyle süpürmek		
do the grocery shopping →	manav alışverişi yapmak		

LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | | | | | |
|------------|----------|----------------|-------------|----------|--------------------|
| 1. pay | 3. a. | the shelves | 9. make | 9/16. i. | a cake |
| 2. set | 4. b. | the dishes | 10. do | 11. j. | the floor |
| 3. dust | 5/15. c. | the room | 11. vacuum | 12. k. | the pet for a walk |
| 4. dry | 6. d. | the plants | 12. take | 13. l. | the pet |
| 5. tidy up | 7. e. | the leaves | 13. feed | 14. m. | shopping |
| 6. water | 8. f. | the dishwasher | 14. go | 10. n. | the ironing |
| 7. sweep | 2. g. | the table | 15. tidy up | 9/16. o. | the bed |
| 8. load | 1. h. | the bills | 16. make | 5/15. p. | the toys |

2

Write the chores under the correct pictures below.

 set the table wash the dishes do the ironing do the laundry dust the shelves clean the windows take the pet for a walk vacuum the floor

1. wash the dishes



2. vacuum the floor



3. do the laundry



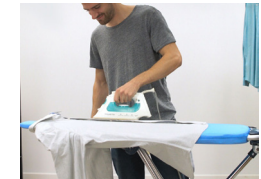
4. clean the window



5. dust the shelves



6. take the pet for a walk



7. do the ironing



8. set the table

3

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- I'm responsible for **dusting** / **paying** the bills.
- Taking care of the whole garden, takes too much time so we share the duties. **Sweeping** / **Mopping** the leaves falls to me.
- Could you **dust** / **iron** the furniture, please?
- It's your responsibility. You must **wash** / **vacuum** the dishes after the meal.
- When did you **feed** / **take** your cat for a walk?
- Gary is in charge of loading the **ironing** / **dishwasher** tomorrow.
- You don't have to **mop** / **pay** the floor today because I did it yesterday.
- It takes hours to **clean up** / **feed** the house because it's too big.

VOCABULARY 2



Adjectives / Noun- Adjective Phrases

responsible	→	sorumlu	delicious	→	lezzetli
hard	→	zor/sıkı	great	→	harika
difficult	→	zor	enjoyable	→	eğlenceli
boring	→	sıkıcı	special	→	özel
tired	→	yorgun	Sacrifice Feast	→	Kurban Bayramı
necessary	→	gerekli	little sister	→	küçük kız kardeş
tidy	→	düzenli	elder brother	→	büyük erkek kardeş
neat	→	tertipli/toplu	outdoor task	→	dışarı işi
quiet	→	sessiz	household chores	→	ev işleri
worth	→	değerinde	delicious meal	→	lezzetli yemek
clean	→	temiz	grocery shopping	→	manav alışverişi
peaceful	→	huzurlu, sakin	peaceful flat	→	sakin daire
same	→	aynı	shopping list	→	alışveriş listesi
old	→	eski	characteristic feature	→	karakteristik özellik
moral	→	ahlaki	real world	→	gerçek dünya
dirty	→	kirli	English course	→	İngilizce kursu
characteristic	→	karakteristik	enough time	→	yeterli zaman
ready	→	hazır	responsible person	→	sorumlu insan
real	→	gerçek	special interest	→	özel ilgi
enough	→	yeterli			
busy	→	meşgul			
household	→	evle ilgili			



EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then complete the sentences.

- Maggie is a responsible person. She always keeps her desk neat (tnae) and tidy (ytdi).
- My brother finds maths class difficult (tdlifucif) and boring (gbonir).
- I didn't have enough (hegnuo) time to study for my exam yesterday.
- Mathilda is a quiet (tqieu) girl. She never speaks during the classes.
- I can't stand seeing dirty (ydtir) clothes around.
- Respect is the most important characteristic (ccihtsreatc) feature in a family.

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- I'm in charge of taking out the garbage. I find it enjoyable / difficult. I really like it.
- Charlie's father isn't a professional chef, but he prepares tired / delicious meals.
- Duties such as cleaning up the house, ironing, doing laundry are household / outdoor chores.
- To me, it is responsible / necessary to tidy up your own room.
- Sally wants to live in a peaceful flat / special interest.
- Mike is my characteristic feature / elder brother.
- I'm sorry, but I can't go out. I'm too busy / ready.
- My English course / flat is on Friday afternoons.

3

Complete the words / phrases.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. grocery | <u>shopping</u> |
| 2. delicious | <u>meal</u> |
| 3. outdoor | <u>task</u> |
| 4. responsible | <u>person</u> |
| 5. household | <u>chore</u> |
| 6. peaceful | <u>flat</u> |
| 7. real | <u>world</u> |
| 8. characteristic | <u>feature</u> |



4

Write the words / phrases under the pictures.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> boring | <input type="radio"/> tired | <input type="radio"/> grocery shopping | <input type="radio"/> outdoor task |
| <input type="radio"/> dirty | <input type="radio"/> household chore | <input type="radio"/> little sister | <input type="radio"/> neat and tidy |



1. outdoor task



2. grocery shopping



3. household chore



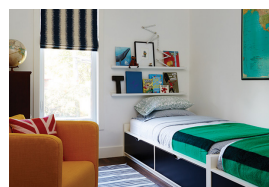
4. little sister



5. tired



6. dirty



7. neat and tidy



8. boring

5

Circle the 9 phrases in the word-search puzzle and write them next to the numbers as in the example.



1. DELICIOUS MEAL
2. RESPONSIBLE PERSON
3. PEACEFUL FLAT
4. GROCERY SHOPPING
5. SHOPPING LIST
6. ENOUGH TIME
7. HOUSEHOLD CHORE
8. OUTDOOR TASK
9. CHARACTERISTIC FEATURE

VOCABULARY 3

NOUNS

chore	ev işi	dish	yemek
duty	görev	right	hak
task	görev	parent	ebeveyn
dishwasher	bulaşık makinesi	desk	sıra
bed	yatak	corridor	koridor
dish	bulaşık	furniture	mobilya
garbage	çöp	shelf	raf
trash	çöp	grocery	manav
dinner	aşam yemeği	turn	sıra, nöbet
laundry	kirli çamaşır	bill	fatura
floor	zemin/yer	promise	söz
chef	aşçı, şef	tradition	gelenek
relative	akraba	janitor	hademe, temizlikçi
plant	bitki	slipper	terlik
leaf	yaprak	habit	alışkanlık
housework	ev işi	feature	özellik
responsibility	sorumluluk	meal	yemek
meat	et	bathroom	banyo
dessert	tatlı	obligation	görev, zorunluluk
guest	misafir	fun	eğlence
doorbell	kapı zili		
outdoor	dışarı		

EXERCISES

1

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

- You don't need to wear your **meals** / **slippers** in this room.
- Sharon hates doing the **housework** / **garbage**.
- What are your **corridors** / **obligations** at home?
- I trust Jack because he always keeps his **laundry** / **promises**.
- The **bill** / **doorbell** is ringing. I must answer it.
- My brother works as a **shelf** / **janitor** in a high school.
- Glen never eats **meat** / **leaf** dishes.
- Kate and Fred are my close **relatives** / **dessert**.



2

Put the letters into the correct order to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. orche | <u>chore</u> | 9. rutn | <u>turn</u> |
| 2. enpart | <u>parent</u> | 10. aitjrno | <u>janitor</u> |
| 3. alme | <u>meal</u> | 11. eurnftir | <u>furniture</u> |
| 4. nedinr | <u>dinner</u> | 12. bngalitoio | <u>obligation</u> |
| 5. htrig | <u>right</u> | 13. olfro | <u>floor</u> |
| 6. turfeae | <u>feature</u> | 14. atem | <u>mate</u> |
| 7. cergroy | <u>grocery</u> | 15. hastr | <u>trash</u> |
| 8. ithab | <u>habit</u> | 16. irtaleev | <u>relative</u> |

3

Write the words under the pictures.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> trash | <input type="radio"/> tired | <input type="radio"/> leaf | <input type="radio"/> dishwasher |
| <input type="radio"/> shelf | <input type="radio"/> furniture | <input type="radio"/> slippers | <input type="radio"/> janitor |



1. dishwasher



2. tired



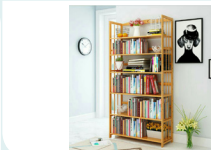
3. slippers



4. trash



5. furniture



6. shelf



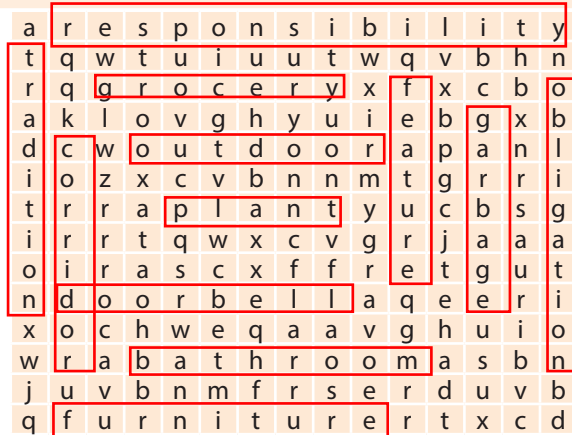
7. janitor



8. leaf

4

Find and circle the 12 words in the word-search puzzle. Then write them next to the numbers.



1. responsibility
2. obligation
3. feature
4. garbage
5. doorbell
6. corridor
7. bathroom
8. tradition
9. grocery
10. outdoor
11. furniture
12. plant

VOCABULARY 4

VERBS/VERB PHRASES

do	→	yapmak	decorate	→	dekore etmek
make	→	yapmak	pay	→	ödemek
load	→	doldurmak	clean	→	temizlemek
empty	→	boşaltmak	sweep	→	süpürmek
wash	→	yıkamak	enter	→	girmek
dry	→	kurutmak	become	→	olmak
cook	→	yemek yapmak	affect	→	etkilemek
feed	→	beslemek	leave	→	bırakmak, ayrılmak
seem	→	gibi görünmek	forget	→	unutmak
water	→	sulamak	feel	→	hissetmek
warn	→	uyarmak	shop	→	alışveriş yapmak
share	→	paylaşmak	clean up	→	temizlemek
welcome	→	karşılama	take out	→	dışarı çıkarmak
ring	→	çalmak (zil vb)	hang out	→	asmak (çamaşır)
prepare	→	hazırlamak	take care	→	bakımını üstlenmek
respect	→	saygı duymak	tidy up	→	düzenlemek
arrive	→	varmak, ulaşmak	get ready	→	hazırlamak
disturb	→	rahatsız etmek	look after	→	bakımını üstlenmek
return	→	geri dönmek, geri götürmek			
mop	→	paspaslamak			
iron	→	ütülemek			

EXERCISES

1

Put the letters into the correct order to find the verbs. Then complete the sentences.

1. I want to prepare (paprere) a healthy breakfast for you tomorrow.
2. Helen is going to decorate (oratdece) the room for her brother's birthday.
3. I usually forget (gefort) people's names because I'm too old.
4. Who is going to welcome (comwele) the guests?
5. I need to leave (vleae) the party before ten o'clock.
6. It's not my responsibility to empty (ptemy) the dishwasher in my family.
7. Be quiet, please. Don't disturb (tudisrb) your neighbours.
8. Can you iron (oirn) this shirt for me?

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. You should **tidy up** / **become** your room because it's messy.
2. I'm going to **load** / **look after** my little sister tomorrow.
3. Children should **warn** / **wash** their hands before and after meals.
4. My mother and sister **welcome** / **clean** up the house every Sunday.
5. Is it Sarah's responsibility to **hang out** / **seem** the clothes?
6. Mr Moon always **takes out** / **feeds** the trash at the weekend.
7. I must **arrive** / **return** these books to the library now.
8. People should **respect** / **water** each other's rights.



3

Write the verbs to complete the phrases.

1. **pay** _____ the bills
2. **sweep** _____ the leaves
3. **mop/vacuum** _____ the floor
4. **welcome** _____ the guests
5. **hang** _____ out the clothes
6. **take out** _____ the garbage
7. **empty/load** _____ the dishwasher
8. **prepare** _____ dinner



4

Look at the pictures and circle the correct options.



1. **mop** / arrive



2. get ready / **sweep**



3. **iron** / respect



4. **wash** / water



5. disturb / **feed**



6. **load** / affect

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1. I. special a. list
 II. shopping b. feature
 III. characteristic c. interest

Match the phrases above.

- A) 1 - b / 2 - c / 3 - a
 B) 1 - a / 2 - c / 3 - b
 C) 1 - b / 2 - a / 3 - c
 D) 1 - c / 2 - a / 3 - b

2. _____ ?
- Mopping the floor
 - Vacuuming the floor
 - Washing the dishes
 - Dusting the furniture

Choose the best title for the list.

- A) Peaceful Flats B) Household Chores
 C) Doorbells D) Outdoor Tasks

3. My features at home are dusting the furniture, loading the dishwasher and doing the laundry.

Which underlined word is ODD?

- A) furniture B) laundry
 C) features D) dishwasher

4. **OUTDOOR TASKS**

- I. taking out the garbage
 II. shopping
 III. vacuuming the floor
 IV. sweeping the leaves

Choose the ODD one on the list.

- A) I B) II
 C) III D) IV

5. Everybody has different interests in my family. My mother mops the floor, my father cooks meals and I'm in charge of some outdoor tasks.

The underlined word is WRONG. Which of the following words can we replace with it?

- A) rights B) responsibilities
 C) rooms D) relatives

6. I don't like being in the (I) _____. So I prefer shopping instead of cooking. I also hate watering the (II) _____. I would rather (III) _____ the ironing.

Choose the correct option to fill in the blanks.

- A) I - guest, II - furniture, III - load
 B) I - corridor, II - garbage, III - prepare
 C) I - bathroom, II - mop, III - dust
 D) I - kitchen, II - plants, III - do

MARK TEST

7.

Erica's responsibilities

- ✓ Do the shopping
- ✓ Water the plants
- ✓ Load the dishwasher
- ✓ Take out the garbage

Which picture shows a chore that Erica IS NOT responsible for?



VOCABULARY TEST

8-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

8. _____ and cooking are two kitchen chores.

- A) Hanging out the clothes
- B) Paying the bills
- C) Sweeping the leaves
- D) Loading the dishwasher

9. **Carla** : Why are you angry with Jason?

Henry : Because he keeps breaking his _____ .

- A) features
- B) promises
- C) meals
- D) real world

10. **Adrian** : Do you like watering the plants?

Gheorge : Yes, sure. Gardening is my _____ interest. I really like spending time with the plants.

- A) enough
- B) special
- C) same
- D) moral

11. **Melike**: What are you responsible for?

Riza : I'm in charge of doing the laundry and mopping the _____ .

- A) furniture
- B) doorbell
- D) floor
- C) right

12. My little brother doesn't have any _____ because he is just 5.

- A) shelves
- B) features
- D) responsibilities
- C) interests

13. Our school _____ sweeps the leaves every day.

- A) garden
- B) guest
- C) janitor
- D) children

14. **Lora** : Do you share the chores at home?

Jack : Sure. In my opinion, it's _____ .

- A) necessary
- B) boring
- C) peaceful
- D) tired

15. **Merve** : Do you share the household _____ in your family?

Sedat : Yes, of course.

- A) slippers
- B) chores
- C) promises
- D) janitors

16. In our home, we share our responsibilities. For instance, it is my _____ to clean up the bathroom today.

- A) turn
- B) feature
- C) interest
- D) world

17. My little sister hates _____ the dishwasher.

- A) mopping
- B) paying
- C) loading
- D) sweeping

18.



Richard

Respecting the elderly is an old _____ in my family.

- A) desk
- C) tradition
- B) chore
- D) dessert

19. It's my responsibility to _____ the books today.

- A) return
- B) feed
- C) prepare
- D) decorate

20.



Jaydan

What are your responsibilities at home?

I'm in charge of _____ my bed and loading _____ .

- A) disturbing / emptying
- B) paying / plants
- C) tidying up / the furniture
- D) making / the dishwasher



Mirkan

GRAMMAR 1

Expressing Likes And Dislikes

- To state our feelings, thoughts or likes/dislikes, we can use some certain verbs such as 'like, dislike or hate'.
- We can express our likes or dislikes by using the following structures.
 - Subject + like / dislike / enjoy / love / hate + noun
 - Subject + like / dislike / enjoy / love / hate + Verb+ing + noun
 - Subject + like / dislike / enjoy / love / hate + Verb + ing

Examples:

1. I like the housework.
2. I like doing the housework.
3. I like cooking.

Affirmative Form

I You We They	like dislike enjoy love hate	household chores. / ironing.
He She It	likes dislikes enjoys loves hates	household chores. / ironing.

Negative Form

I You We They	don't like don't dislike don't enjoy don't love don't hate	household chores. / ironing.
He She It	doesn't like doesn't dislike doesn't enjoy doesn't love doesn't hate	household chores. / ironing.

Interrogative Form

Do	I you we they	like dislike enjoy love hate	household chores / ironing?
Does	he she it	like dislike enjoy love hate	household chores/ ironing?



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets in the correct forms.

- I like cleaning up (like / clean up) the house as a chore.
- Which chore do you hate doing (hate/ do) at home?
- She dislike going (dislike / go) shopping.
- I don't like setting (not like/ set) the table.
- Does she like taking (like / take) out the garbage?
- They really love sharing (love / share) their tasks.
- Kinem doesn't like cooking (not like / cook).
- I hate doing (hate / do) the laundry.
- Which chore do you like doing (like do) most?
- He enjoys mopping (enjoy / mop) the floor.

2

Order the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. like / parents / your / do / you / helping?
<u>Do you like helping your parents</u> ? | 5. does / vacuuming / love / she / the floor?
<u>Does she love vacuuming the floor</u> ? |
| 2. hates / chore / as / a / she / ironing.
<u>She hates ironing as a chore</u> . | 6. really / doing / I / grocery / enjoy / shopping.
<u>I really enjoy doing grocery shopping</u> |
| 3. I / emptying / dislike / the dishwasher.
<u>I dislike emptying the dishwasher</u> . | 7. the plants / task / and / watering / is / I / my / it / like.
<u>Watering the plants is my task and I like it</u> . |
| 4. loading / so / can / do / I / like / the dishwasher / it.
<u>I like loading the dishwasher, so I can do it</u> | 8. likes / all of / chores / she / her.
<u>She likes all of her chores</u> . |

3

Write sentences in the correct forms.

1. I / like / iron

- + I like ironing .
- I don't like ironing .
? Do I like ironing ?

3. he / hate / his duties

- + He hates his duties .
- He doesn't hate his duties .
? Does he hate his duties ?

2. she / dislike / her chores

- + She dislikes her chores .
- She doesn't dislike her chores .
? Does she dislike her chores .

4. you / enjoy / go shopping

- + You enjoy going shopping .
- You don't enjoy going shopping .
? Do you enjoy going shopping .

GRAMMAR 2

Expressing Obligation

- We usually use **'must'** or **'have to'** to express obligation or necessity.
- We talk about rules, orders or duties to express the idea of obligation.
- We use **'must'** when the speaker decides that something is necessary to do.
- We use **'have to'** when somebody else decides that something is necessary for you to do.

MUST

Affirmative Form

I / You / We / He / She / It **must** take out garbage.

Negative Form

I / We / You / They / He / She / It **must not / mustn't** take out garbage.

Interrogative Form

Must	I / you / we / they / he / she / it	take out the garbage?
-------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------

HAVE TO

Affirmative Form

I / You / We / They **have to** load the dishwasher.

He / She / It **has to** load the dishwasher.

Negative Form

I / You / We / They **do not / don't have to** load the dishwasher.

He / She / It **does not / doesn't have to** load the dishwasher.

Interrogative Form

Do	I / you / we / they	have to load the dishwasher?
Does	he / she / it	have to load the dishwasher?



EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the correct forms of 'must' or 'have to'.

1. Does Mandy have to dry the dishes tomorrow?
2. My little sister doesn't have to do any chores because she is only three years old.
3. You must tidy up your room before you go out.
4. They mustn't disturb their neighbours in the evening.
5. It's my brother's birthday. I must decorate the room for him.
6. Jack's parents don't have to go shopping for breakfast because the fridge is full of food.
7. Olga's brother must finish his homework in an hour. It's important.
8. Students mustn't eat or drink in the class. It's a rule to obey.

2

Use the given words / phrases to make sentences in the correct forms of 'must' or 'have to'.

1. I / must / do the laundry

+ I must do the laundry .

- I mustn't do the laundry .

? Must I do the laundry ?

2. she / have to / tidy her room

+ She has to tidy her room .

- She doesn't have to tidy her room .

? Does she have to tidy her room ?

3. Samuel / must / dust the shelves

+ Samuel must dust the shelves .

- Samuel mustn't dust the shelves .

? Must Samuel dust the shelves ?

4. Emre and Josh/ have to / go shopping

+ Emre and Josh have to go shopping .

- Emre and Josh don't have to go shopping .

? Do Emre and Josh have to go shopping ?

5. your father / have to / take out the garbage

+ Your father has to take out the garbage .

- Your father doesn't have to take out the garbage .

? Does your father have to take out the garbage ?

GRAMMAR 3

Expressing Responsibilities

- If we have a responsibility, task or duty, we can use 'be responsible for' or 'be in charge of'.

Examples:

1. I'm responsible for dusting the furniture.
2. I'm in charge of dusting the furniture.

Rule → be responsible for + noun / Verb + ing

Rule → be in charge of + noun / Verb + ing

Affirmative Form

I'm **responsible for / in charge of**

doing the laundry today.

Negative Form

She isn't **responsible for / in charge of**

paying the bills.

Interrogative Form

Is he **responsible for / in charge of**

cooking?

ATTENTION!

- * Don't you think it is necessary to do the ironing?
- * It is time to do the ironing.

EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the correct words / phrases.

1. I'm responsible for mopping the floor.
2. She is in charge of watering the plants.
3. It is time to clean up the house, I think.
4. Are you responsible for tidying up the toys?
5. Don't you think it is necessary to wash the dishes? They are dirty.
6. Which duties are you in charge of doing at home?
7. You aren't in charge of dusting the shelves. It's my duty.
8. Don't you think it's necessary to make your bed?

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

1. It is **responsible** / **time** for you to cook a nice meal.
2. Tarik is in charge **for** / **of** going shopping this week.
3. **Don't** / **Doesn't** you think it's necessary to do some chores at home?
4. Which school chores are you responsible **of** / **for**?
5. Don't you think it is **in charge** / **necessary** to feed your cat?
6. I think it's **time** / **in charge of** to do the laundry and hang out the clothes.
7. Amanda is **in charge** / **responsible for** doing the laundry.
8. I'm **responsible** / **in charge** of watering the plants.

GRAMMAR TEST

1. necessary / the house / to / clean up / don't / is / you / think / it?

Which of the following orders is CORRECT?

- A) You don't necessary think it is clean up to the house?
 B) Don't you think it is necessary to clean up the house?
 C) Don't think you it is necessary to clean the house up?
 D) It is necessary to clean up the house don't think you?

2. Ali is responsible for doing the laundry. His mother wants to remind him his responsibility

What should she say to remind his duty?

- A) You don't have to do any chores.
 B) It's my duty to do the laundry.
 C) I think it is time for you to do the laundry.
 D) Is it necessary for me to do the laundry?

3. I. What do you think about your responsibilities at home?

II. Tidy up their toys is a good responsibility for children.

III. I mustn't forget to take out the trash.

IV. Don't you think it's necessary to empty the dishwasher?

V. Daisy is responsible for tidy up her room.

How many of the sentences are grammatically CORRECT?

- A) 2 B) 3 C) 4 D) 1

4. **Sila** : I'm not in charge of doing the laundry. It's my brother's duty.

Sevim : My duties are dusting the furniture and emptying dishwasher. I like them.

Mira : I don't like being in the kitchen. I hate cooking as a chore.

Tuna : I enjoy sweeping the leaves in the garden.

Who expresses his/her dislike?

- A) Mira B) Sevim
 C) Sila D) Tuna

5. **Which of the following statements is an expression of obligation?**

- A) Neil isn't responsible for any outdoor tasks.
 B) Sevda hates paying the bills.
 C) You aren't in charge of cooking tomorrow.
 D) I must tidy up the whole house.

6. My children doesn't have to do any chores around the house today. They must do their homework. I'm in charge of all the housework. I must clean up the house, do the laundry and go shopping.

Which underlined word is grammatically WRONG?

- A) doesn't B) must
 C) charge D) clean

7-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

7. **Zeki** : _____ you have to do any chores at home?

Ray : Yes, it's my responsibility to set the table.

- A) Must B) Are
 C) Do D) Does

8. I don't like _____ the chores in the kitchen.

- A) does B) do
 C) to doing D) doing

9. In my family, my parents are responsible _____ cleaning up the house and cooking. My sisters and I are _____ charge of tidying up the rooms and washing the dishes.

- A) of / for B) for / of
 C) in / in D) for / in

10. Burak must _____ the laundry at the weekend, but he _____ have to cook dinner.

- A) does / don't B) does / mustn't
 C) do / is D) do / doesn't

11. I like _____ the floor, but I hate _____ the furniture.

- A) mopping / dusting B) mopping / dust
C) mop / dusting D) mop / dust

12. **Ricky** : _____ it is necessary to tidy up the house?

Sally : Yes, you're right.

- A) Does B) Must
 C) Don't you think D) Is it time to

13. **Tracy** : What are your duties at school?

Student : I _____ to arrive at school on time and keep my desk tidy.

- A) must B) has
C) am in charge of D) have

14. **Beryl** : You are responsible for _____ the dishes. Please don't forget it.

Robin : I will do it at the weekend. Calm down, please.

- A) to wash B) wash
 C) washing D) washed

15. **Chris** : How about watering the plants?

Iris : Oh, no. I _____ doing it. Can you do it for me, please?

- A) likes B) hate
C) doesn't dislike D) don't hates

16. I _____ doing the outdoor chores. I prefer cooking or cleaning instead of them.

- A) have to B) must
C) in charge D) dislike

17. **Adam** : What are your sister's responsibilities at home?

Victoria : She is _____ dusting the shelves and setting the table. What about yours?

Adam : She _____ tidy her own room and do the ironing.

- A) responsible / has to
B) in charge of / have to
 C) responsible for / must
D) in charge of / must to

18. My parents are in charge _____ preparing breakfast, my sisters and I _____ set the table.

- A) for / has to
B) of / has to
C) in / must
 D) of / must

19. My parents work on weekdays, so I _____ do the chores, but I _____ helping my parents.

- A) must / hate
B) like / must
C) responsible / like
 D) don't have to / love

20. **Paul** : Who is _____ doing the laundry today?

Mike : I think it's Fred's responsibility.

- A) has to B) in charge of
C) must D) have to



Emily



The Housework In My Family

In our family, we share the housework. I mean everybody has responsibilities around the house. My mother is responsible for shopping and doing the laundry. She works in a company, so she gets back home late on weekdays. We do our best to keep the house neat and tidy for her. I'm usually in charge of loading and emptying the dishwasher. Mopping the floor and vacuuming the floor are also my duties.

My father is a great cook, so he prepares delicious meals for us. Ironing and dusting the shelves, sweeping the leaves in the garden and taking out the garbage are also his chores.

I have a brother called Clark. He is twelve years old. He's a responsible boy. He enjoys helping us with the household chores. He tidies his room every day. He sets the table, feeds the pet and dries the dishes in the evening.

We live in a clean and peaceful house because we share the chores and respect each other's rights.

1. In the passage, Emily tells us about _____ .

- A) her boring chores
- B) how they share the housework in her family
- C) her daily routines
- D) her mother's job

2. There IS NO information about _____ in the text.

- A) Clark's age
- B) any kitchen chores
- C) Emily's responsibilities
- D) the chores that Clark hates

3. According to the text, _____ .

- A) sharing the chores is important in Emily's family
- B) they are not happy to share the chores around the house
- C) Clark hates helping his family with the chores
- D) Emily's mother works on Saturday and Sunday

1.



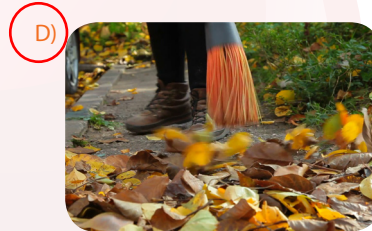
Daisy : Do you have to do any chores at home?

Sharon : Yes, I must do some kitchen tasks such as loading the dishwasher, preparing the breakfast and setting the table.

Daisy : Are you happy with your responsibilities?

Sharon : No, not really. I enjoy outdoor chores like sweeping the leaves and shopping.

Which picture shows a chore that Sharon likes?



2.

	Doing the Shopping	Taking out the trash	Doing the laundry	Watering the plants
Oscar	✓	✗	✓	✓
Yilmaz	✗	✓	✓	✗
Natalie	✓	✓	✗	✗
Selena	✓	✗	✓	✓

The table above shows four people's responsibilities.

Which of the following is CORRECT according to the table?

- A) Yilmaz is responsible for all the chores.
- B) Natalie and Selena don't have to do any outdoor tasks.
- C) Oscar has only one responsibility.
- D) Yilmaz and Natalie must take out the garbage.**

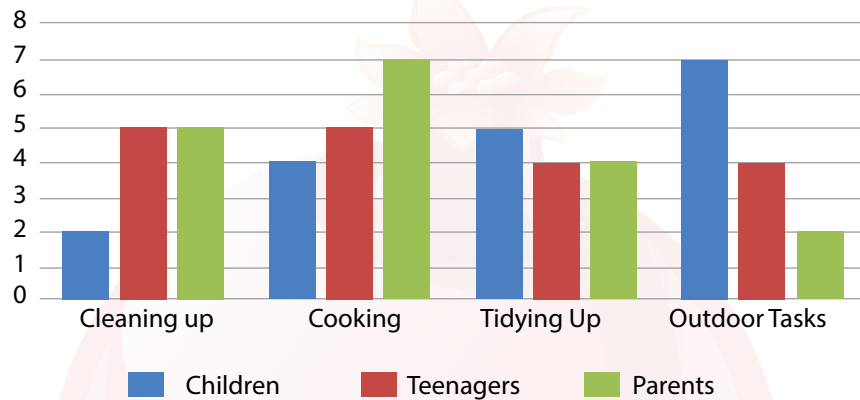
3. My elder brother, Yasin, is responsible for watering the plants and sweeping the leaves in the garden. He doesn't like his duties because _____.

Choose the best option to complete the sentence.

- A) he has a special interest in plants
- B) he wants to live in a clean and peaceful flat
- C) he really enjoys them
- D) he thinks they are difficult and boring

4. ❖ The chart below shows the housework preferences of three age groups in London.

TASK PREFERENCES



Which of the following is FALSE according to the results?

- A) The parents like being in the kitchen most.
- B) The children are keen on outdoor tasks more.
- C) The teenagers enjoy keeping the house clean.
- D) Outdoor tasks are more popular among the three age groups.

- 5.



Marta

I'm in charge of doing the laundry.



Tracy

I must do the ironing.

What are your responsibilities at home?



Barney

Sweeping the leaves in the garden is my responsibility.



Kevin

I am responsible for loading and emptying the dishwasher.

Who has an outdoor task?

- A) Barney
- B) Kevin
- C) Marta
- D) Tracy

6.



My mother works at a restaurant. She is a chef, so she is busy at work all day. We do our best to help her. She is generally responsible for cooking and shopping at home. We all have different responsibilities around the house. My father takes out the garbage and washes the car. I am in charge of feeding my dog and making beds. My little sister Yasemin is just 8 years old, but her tasks are setting the table and tidying up her toys.

Esmá

In Esmá's family, _____ .

Complete the sentence according to the passage.

- A) her little sister Yasemin does most chores
- B) they share the chores
- C) her mother does the chores every day
- D) washing the car is her task

7.



I enjoy feeding our pet and taking care of the plants in the garden. However, I hate all the chores in the kitchen.

Ruby

Which picture shows a chore that Ruby would prefer to do?



8. The table below shows Sid's chores for tomorrow.

Chores	Time
do the laundry	10.15
vacuum the floor	12.00
dust the furniture	14.40
pay the bills	15.00

Which sentence is CORRECT according to the table?

- A) He must finish all the chores in the morning.
- B) He needs to dust the furniture in the afternoon.
- C) He must pay the bills before dusting the furniture.
- D) He must do the laundry at noon.

9. **Kylie** : _____ ?

Nancy : Of course. I always help my parents.

Kylie : _____ ?

Nancy : I'm usually in charge of making my bed, loading and emptying the dishwasher and setting the table.

Kylie : _____ ?

Nancy : I think feeding our pet is more enjoyable.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT Kylie ask Nancy?

- A) What are your responsibilities at home
- B) Do you do any chores around the house
- C) What do you like doing as a chore
- D) When do you do the chores

- 10.



Nathan

My mother is a call center specialist, so she is very busy at work. We all have responsibilities around the house. My sister usually mops the floor and dusts the furniture. My father is in charge of taking out the garbage, watering the plants and shopping. I am responsible for loading and emptying the dishwasher. Doing the laundry and hanging out the clothes are also my responsibilities.

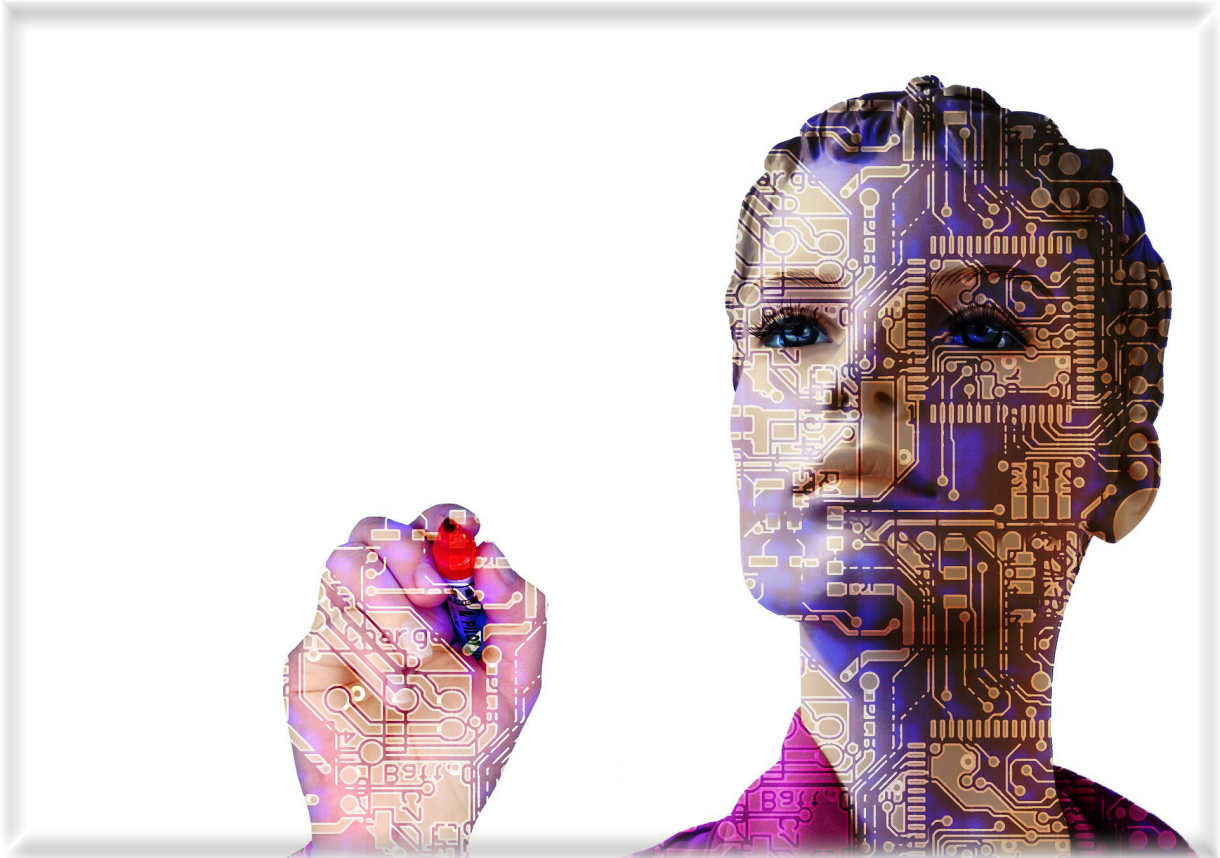
In the passage, there IS NO information about _____ .

- A) Nathan's mother's job
- B) Nathan's favourite chores
- C) Nathan's chores
- D) who is responsible for outdoor tasks

SCIENCE

The most beautiful thing we can experience is the mysterious. It is the source of all true art and science.

Albert Einstein



We are going to learn :

- 📌 describing simple processes
- 📌 expressing preferences
- 📌 making simple inquiries

UNIT 9

UNIT 9 SCIENCE

Common Expressions



The scientific achievements of the past century changed the world.

What are you doing?

What did s/he do?

Who discovered the gravity?

Who invented the light bulb?

Marie Curie is the discoverer of radium.

Guglielmo Marconi is the inventor of radio.

S/he was born in London.

S/he died in New York.

My brother is preparing a science project currently.

What kind of books are you reading currently?

I'm reading a science fiction novel.

Currently, I am reading a book about space travel.

Now scientists are exploring the solar gravity.

Researchers are working on new fossils in the lab.

Newton discovered the gravity of the matter.

What are the current scientific developments you know?

What about currently?

Who are the inventors you know?

Really?

Pay attention to the lab safety.

I think the invention of compass changed the world most.

There are many other scientific achievements.

Geçen yüzyıldaki bilimsel başarılar dünyayı değiştirdi.

Ne yapıyorsun?

O ne yaptı?

Yer çekimini kim keşfetti?

Ampulü kim icat etti?

Radium'un kaşifi Marie Curie'dir.

Radyonun mucidi Guglielmo Marconi'dir.

O Londra'da doğdu.

O New York'da öldü.

Erkek kardeşim bu aralar bir bilim projesi hazırlıyor.

Bu aralar hangi tür kitapları okuyorsun?

Bir bilim kurgu romanı okuyorum.

Bu aralar uzayla ilgili bir kitap okuyorum.

Şu anda bilim adamları güneş çekim kuvvetini keşfediyor.

Araştırmacılar laboratuvarda yeni fosiller üzerinde çalışıyor.

Newton maddenin çekim kuvvetini keşfetti.

Şu aralar bildiğin bilimsel gelişmeler neler?

Ya şu aralar?

Bildiğin mucitler kimler?

Gerçekten mi?

Laboratuvar güvenliğine dikkat et.

Bence dünyayı en çok pusulanın icadı değiştirdi.

Daha birçok başka bilimsel başarı var.

VOCABULARY 1

INVENTIONS & DISCOVERIES

computer	bilgisayar
rabies vaccine	kuduz aşısı
catgut	ameliyat ipliği
smallpox vaccination	çiçek aşısı
compass	pusula
printing press	baskı makinesi, matbaa
steam engine	buhar makinesi
heart chip	kalp çipi
car	araba
smartphone	akıllı telefon
radio	radyo
dishwasher	bulaşık makinesi
tyre	tekerlek
laser	lazer
wheelchair	tekerlekli sandalye
global positioning system (GPS)	evrensel konum sistemi



LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISE

Write the words / phrases under the pictures.

dishwasher

steam engine

wheelchair

smartphone

tyre

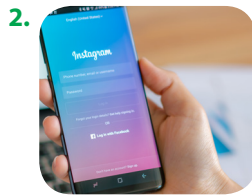
computer

printing press

compass



tyre



smartphone



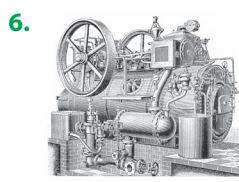
compass



wheelchair



dishwasher



steam engine



computer



printing press

VOCABULARY 2

ADJECTIVES

renowned	ünlü	sight-disabled	görme engelli
wearable	giyilebilir	electronic	elektronik
scientific	bilimsel	portable	seyyar, taşınabilir
common	ortak	mental	zihinsel
important	önemli	paraplegic	belden aşağısı felçli
possible	mümkün	useful	kullanışlı, faydalı
successful	başarılı	eco-friendly	çevre dostu
rich	zengin	special	özel
poor	fakir	healthy	sağlıklı
known	bilinen	daily	günlük
famous	meşhur, ünlü	high-tech	ileri teknoloji
physical	fiziksel	genius	dahi, zeki
private	özel	living	yaşayan, canlı
well-equipped	donanımlı	well-known	ünlü
various	çeşitli	brilliant	muhteşem
written	yazılı	honorary	onursal
medical	sağlıkla ilgili	ground-breaking	çığır açan

EXERCISES

1

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- The tyre is a **sight-disabled** / **ground-breaking** invention in the world.
- Aziz Sancar is a **renowned** / **various** scientist.
- Smartphones are very **useful** / **healthy** communication devices.
- Honorary** / **High-tech** devices like computers make our lives easier.
- Wheelchairs are for **paraplegic** / **well-known** people.
- Albert Einstein had a brilliant mind. He was a **genius** / **mental**.
- Rabies vaccine is an important **wearable** / **scientific** achievement.
- Smartphones are **physical** / **portable** because they are easy to carry.
- Nikola Tesla had **poor** / **brilliant** ideas and inventions.
- This laboratory is **written** / **well-equipped**. It has all the necessary things.

2

Complete the sentences with the adjectives below.

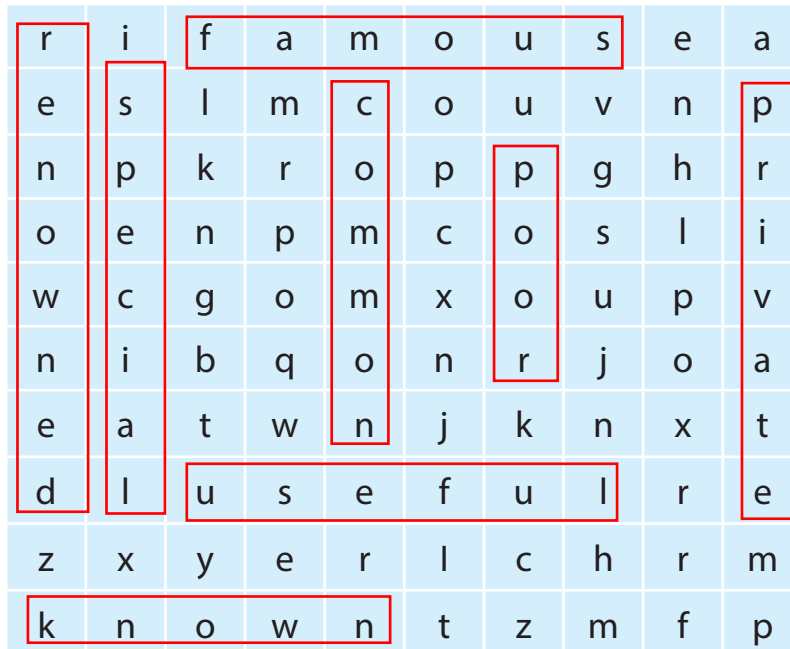
- eco-friendly living successful electronic various
 possible common portable daily healthy

1. It's possible to observe the sky through a telescope.
2. I think scientists should invent eco-friendly tools and devices to protect our planet.
3. Plants and animals are some examples of living organisms.
4. Computers and smartphones are electronic devices.
5. Some high-tech tools and devices make our daily lives very easy.
6. Laptops are portable devices. We can carry them everywhere.
7. Mr. Moon has a healthy lifestyle because he exercises every day.
8. Einstein was a successful scientist. He got lots of prizes.
9. This device is very practical because it has various features and functions.
10. Smartphone addiction is a common problem in the world.

LEARN STEP BY STEP

3

Find and circle the 8 words in the word-search puzzle.



VOCABULARY 3

NOUNS

medicine	→	tıp, ilaç	transportation	→	ulaşım
geometry	→	geometri	travel	→	seyehat, gezi
microbe	→	mikrop	housemaid	→	hizmetçi
catgut	→	ameliyat ipliği	porcelain	→	porcelain
compass	→	pusula	machine	→	makine
vaccine	→	aşı	dish	→	bulaşık
tyre	→	tekerlek	computer	→	bilgisayar
land	→	toprak, kara	award	→	ödül
navigation	→	navigasyon	prize	→	ödül
degree	→	derece	technology	→	teknoloji
system	→	sistem	structure	→	yapı, bünye
academician	→	akademisyen	disability	→	engellilik
chemist	→	kimyager	printer	→	yazıcı
biochemist	→	biyo kimyager	patent	→	buluş belgesi
biologist	→	biyolog	purpose	→	amaç
scientist	→	bilim adamı	text	→	metin
research	→	araştırma	disease	→	hastalık
cancer	→	kanser	space	→	uzay
repair	→	tamir	news	→	haber
chemistry	→	kimya	documentary	→	belgesel
culture	→	kültür	competition	→	yarışma
physics	→	fizik	project	→	proje
engineer	→	mühendis	profession	→	meslek
chip	→	çip	road	→	yol
battery	→	batarya	building	→	bina
device	→	cihaz	hospital	→	hastane
feature	→	özellik	capacity	→	kapasite
achievement	→	başarı	signal	→	sinyal, işaret
science	→	bilim	hope	→	umut
experiment	→	deney	smell	→	koku
safety	→	güvenlik	lab	→	laboratuvar
century	→	yüzyıl	microscope	→	mikroskop
world	→	dünya	result	→	sonuç
fossil	→	fosil, kalıntı	cell	→	hücre
gravity	→	yer çekimi	invitation	→	davet
discovery	→	keşif	professor	→	profesör
discoverer	→	kaşif	theory	→	teori
invention	→	icat, buluş	communication	→	iletişim
inventor	→	mucit	tool	→	araç, gereç
planet	→	gezegen			



EXERCISES

1

Write the words under the correct pictures.

experiment

printer

gravity

scientist

catgut

compass

vaccine

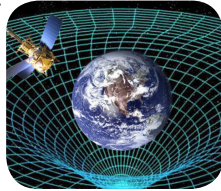
disability

1.



printer

2.



gravity

3.



scientist

4.



experiment

5.



vaccine

6.



disability

7.



catgut

8.



compass

2

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

- I think the telephone is the best **housemaid** / **invention**.
- Can you explain the **battery** / **purpose** of your experiment?
- I'm a biochemist and mathematician. I've got two **results** / **professions**.
- We live in the twenty first **century** / **structure**.
- Marie Curie was a great **discoverer** / **technology**.
- My car has got a great **dish** / **navigation system**.
- In my opinion, the tyre is the most important scientific **competition** / **achievement**.
- My daughter is interested in **chemistry** / **patent** as a department at university.
- What are the main **prizes** / **features** of your new smartphone?
- George wants to go to university and study **medicine** / **capacity**.

3

Order the letters to write the words in the boxes. Then use the numbers to find the secret word.

LBA

L A B

CICBEOMOSR

M I C R O S C O P E ⁴

RESCAHRE

R E S E A R C H ⁶

NEEIEPTRMX

E X P E R I M E N T ⁵

MICTERSYH

C H E M I S T R Y ⁷

NAPLET

P L A N E T

VERSCYIDO

D I S C O V E R Y

PACSE

¹ S P A C E

EVNCAIC

V A C C I N E ²

NEIVOTNR

³ I N V E N T O R

S C I E N C E

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

4

Find the link between the words. Then do the matching.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| 1. profession | d | a. result, purpose |
| 2. space | e | b. lab, invention |
| 3. scientist | h | c. lab, experiment |
| 4. disease | g | d. biochemist, biologist |
| 5. invention | j | e. planet, gravity |
| 6. physics | c/e/h | f. experiment, invention, lab |
| 7. safety | c | g. cancer, hospital |
| 8. tyre | i | h. theory, discovery |
| 9. microscope | b/c/f | i. transportation, invention |
| 10. experiment | a | j. printer, compass |

VOCABULARY 4



NOUN/ADJECTIVE PHRASES

rabies vaccine	→	kuduz aşısı	solar gravity	→	güneş çekimi
law of gravity	→	yerçekimi kanunu	daily life	→	günlük hayat
smallpox vaccination	→	çiçek aşısı	species of plants	→	bitki türleri
printing press	→	matbaa	successful inventor	→	başarılı mucit
steam engine	→	buhar makinesi	medical purpose	→	tıbbi amaç
navigation system	→	navigasyon sistemi	scientific action	→	bilimsel çalışma
molecular biologist	→	moleküler biyolog	science magazine	→	bilim dergisi
physics engineer	→	fizik mühendisi	sound system	→	ses sistemi
heart chip	→	kalp çipi	electronic chip	→	elektronik çip
skin cancer	→	cilt kanseri	walking stick	→	baston
excavation area	→	kazı alanı	mental capacity	→	zihinsel kapasite
scientific research	→	bilimsel araştırma	sweet basil	→	tatlı fesleğen
common feature	→	ortak özellik	high-tech device	→	ileri teknoloji cihaz
science project	→	bilim projesi	living structure	→	canlı yapı
lab safety	→	laboratuvar güvenliği	experiment result	→	deney sonucu
test tube	→	deney tüpü	soil sample	→	toprak numunesi
scientific achievement	→	bilimsel başarı	chemical substance	→	kimyasal madde
water screw	→	Arşimet burgusu, burgu türbini	global media company	→	evrensel medya şirketi
gravity of the matter	→	maddenin yer çekimi			



EXERCISES

1

Write the phrases under the pictures.

test tube

printing press

steam engine

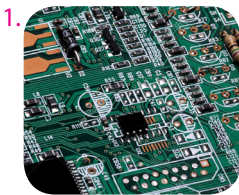
walking stick

navigation system

electronic chip

excavation area

soil sample



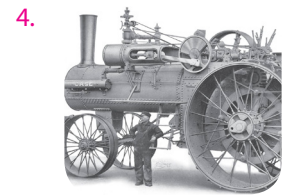
electronic chip



soil sample



test tube



steam engine



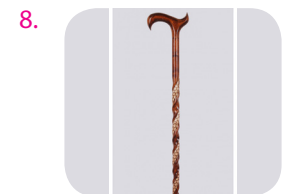
printing press



navigation system



excavation area



walking stick

2

Match the halves of the phrases.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. lab | 2 ___ a. gravity | 9. rabies | 10 ___ i. magazine |
| 2. solar | 8 ___ b. cancer | 10. science | 12 ___ j. basil |
| 3. water | 4 ___ c. purpose | 11. mental | 14 ___ k. engine |
| 4. medical | 1 ___ d. safety | 12. sweet | 16 ___ l. sample |
| 5. experiment | 6 ___ e. action | 13. printing | 9 ___ m. vaccine |
| 6. scientific | 7 ___ f. area | 14. steam | 15 ___ n. biologist |
| 7. excavation | 5 ___ g. result | 15. molecular | 11 ___ o. capacity |
| 8. skin | 3 ___ h. screw | 16. soil | 13 ___ p. press |

3

Complete the sentences with the words and phrases below.

- | | | |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> navigation system | <input type="radio"/> heart chip | <input type="radio"/> samples |
| <input type="radio"/> successful inventor | <input type="radio"/> living structures | <input type="radio"/> gravity |

- The navigation system is the latest version of the compass.
- Nicola Tesla was a successful inventor.
- Canan Dağdeviren invented a wearable heart chip working battery free.
- Cells are the smallest units of living structures.
- We view some soil samples under the microscope at our school lab.
- In the 19th century, Newton discovered the law of gravity.

4

Choose the correct option in each sentence.

- Archimedes is the inventor of water screw / living structures.
- I enjoy reading science magazines / chemical substances.
- Luis Pasteur developed the first rabies vaccine / sweet basil in 1885.
- The Archaeologists are going to the soil sample / excavation area to look for some fossils.
- They are waiting for the experiment results / species of plants in the lab.
- Smartphones and laptops are high-tech devices / steam engines.
- Aziz Sancar is a molecular biologist / scientific achievement.
- Studying hard is the common feature / soil sample of successful scientists.

VOCABULARY 5

VERBS / VERB PHRASES

change	değiřtirmek	observe	gözlemek
explore	incelemek	discuss	tartıřmak
select	seçmek	die	ölmek
promote	tanıtılmak	graduate	mezun olmak
support	desteklemek	outdistance	geçmek
invent	icat etmek	work	çalışmak
succeed	başarmak	use	kullanmak
diagnose	teşhis etmek	heat	ısıtmak
develop	geliřtirmek	operate	çalıştırmak
conduct	yürütmek	view	incelemek
prepare	hazırlamak	take part	yer almak
find	bulmak	pay attention	dikkat etmek
discover	keşfetmek	formulate	formüle etmek
show	göstermek	found	kurmak
know	bilmek	design	dizayn etmek, tasarlamak
improve	ilerletmek	work on	üzerine çalışmak
move	hareket etmek	move with	beraber hareket etmek
decide	karar vermek	give off	saçmak, yaymak
search	aramak	keep away	uzak durmak, uzak tutmak
make	yapmak	take note	not almak
convey	iletmek	look for	aramak
receive	almak	look into	incelemek
dissolve	çözmek	go on	devam etmek
insert	takmak	cure	tedavi etmek
raise	yükselmek		
mean	anlamına gelmek		
create	oluřturmak		

EXERCISES

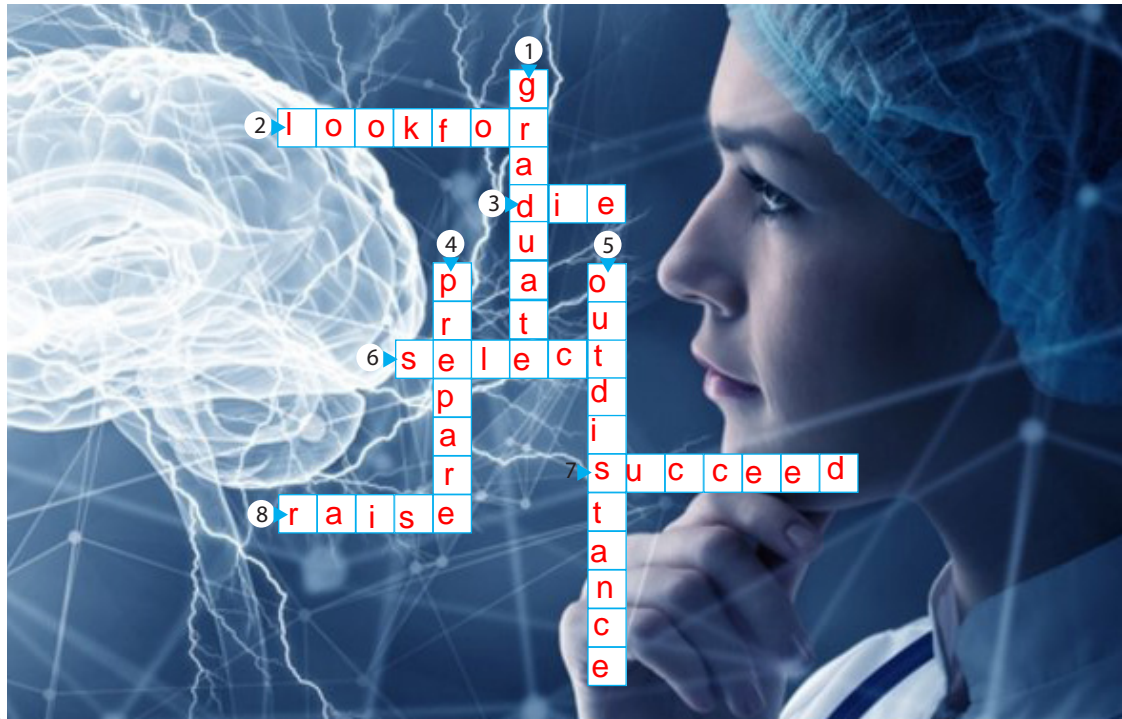
1

Order the letters to find the verbs. Then write them in the spaces.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. ratopee | <u>operate</u> | 7. gnodiase | <u>diagnose</u> |
| 2. mulforate | <u>formulate</u> | 8. elodevp | <u>develop</u> |
| 3. moprote | <u>promote</u> | 9. rovimpe | <u>improve</u> |
| 4. duconct | <u>conduct</u> | 10. lorexpe | <u>explore</u> |
| 5. vecony | <u>convey</u> | 11. cusdiss | <u>discuss</u> |
| 6. soldisve | <u>dissolve</u> | 12. ceesudc | <u>succeed</u> |

2

Read the clues to solve the puzzle

**Across**

2. to try to find or discover something
3. to stop living
6. to choose
7. to achieve something, do well
8. to move something to a higher position

Down

1. to complete studying successfully
4. to make something ready
5. to leave something behind

3

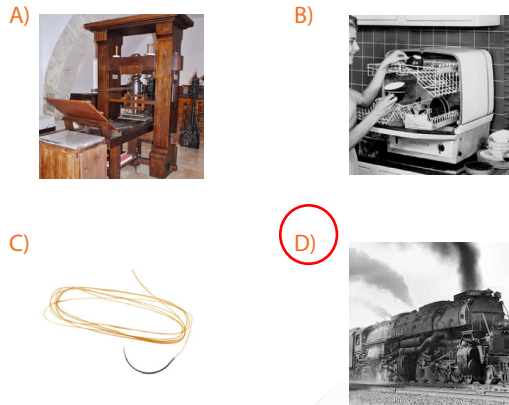
Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. If you invent a device, you must **receive** / **insert** your patent.
2. The invention of the steam engine **created** / **changed** the world.
3. Nelly wants to **observe** / **diagnose** these plants under a microscope.
4. A robot called Curiosity **discovered** / **invented** water on the Mars.
5. This invention **keeps away** / **gives off** mosquitos.
6. His project **worked** / **outdistanced** twenty-one projects and got the prize.
7. Luna wants to **work on** / **take part** solar gravity.
8. Albert Einstein **graduated** / **developed** important theories.

1. Inventions

- Dishwasher
- Printing press
- Computer
- Catgut

Which of the following picture IS NOT related to the list?



2. Oktay Sinanoğlu was a successful _____.

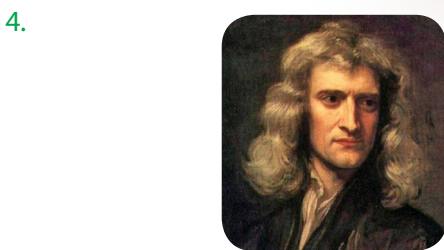
Which of the following IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) scientist
- B) chemist
- C) theory
- D) biophysicist

3. Louis Pasteur developed the rabies vaccine. He was a successful scientist.

What was Pasteur's development about?

- A) Engineering
- B) Medicine
- C) Navigation
- D) Disability



Isaac Newton invented the law of gravity.

The underlined word is WRONG. Which of the following words can we replace with it?

- A) discovered
- B) diagnosed
- C) conducted
- D) received

5.

INVENTIONS

- I. Radium
- II. Printing Press
- III. Tyre
- IV. Steam Engine

Which IS NOT an invention on the list?

- A) I
- B) II
- C) III
- D) IV

6-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

6. This device is _____ because it doesn't harm the environment.

- A) portable
- B) paraplegic
- C) eco-friendly
- D) written

7. Wesley came first in the 'Young Inventors' competition. His project _____ all of the other projects.

- A) outdistanced
- B) achieved
- C) found
- D) formulated

8. _____, please because I'm going to explain an important fact about living organisms.

- A) Move with
- B) Look for
- C) Give off
- D) Pay attention

9. Smartphones are high-tech _____.

- A) inventors
- B) cures
- C) results
- D) devices

10. **Raheem** : What are you doing in the lab?

John : I'm putting some _____ in a test tube.

- A) experiment
- B) area
- C) chemical substance
- D) molecular biologist

11. Marie Curie is the _____ of two elements.

- A) machine
B) gravity
C) experiment
D) discoverer

12. **Scarlett** :What are you doing with that machine?

Ella :I'm trying to _____ it.

- A) invent
B) operate
C) dissolve
D) graduate

13. Wheelchairs make the lives of some _____ people easier.

- A) disabled
B) successful
C) electronic
D) well-equipped

14. Pay attention to the lab _____ because these test tubes may explode.

- A) land
B) press
C) safety
D) important

15. I think it's _____ to cure skin cancer successfully.

- A) physical
B) possible
C) various
D) mental

16. Josephine Garis Cochrane was a great _____. She designed and created the first dishwasher.

- A) battery
B) inventor
C) porcelain
D) patent

17. There is some dangerous chemical substance in the _____.

- A) invitation
B) award
C) test tube
D) microscope

18. Edward Jenner developed and introduced the first smallpox _____.

- A) vaccination
B) purpose
C) space
D) biologist

19. This machine can _____ cataracts in a less painful way.

- A) create
B) succeed
C) dissolve
D) perform

20. John had an accident last week. He's in a _____ because he can't walk.

- A) prize
B) signal
C) wheelchair
D) structure

GRAMMAR 1

Describing The Actions Happening Currently

☼ We usually use the present continuous to express the idea that something is happening now.

Example: Liam is performing an experiment in the laboratory now.

☼ We also use this tense to talk about longer actions in progress now. 'now, this month, currently, this year' are some common time expressions of this tense.

Example: I'm currently working on a science project.

Affirmative Form

I	am conducting	an experiment
He / She / It	is conducting	an experiment.
You / We / They	are conducting	an experiment.

Negative Form

I	am not conducting	an experiment.
He / She / It	is not / isn't conducting	an experiment.
You / We / They	are not / aren't	an experiment.

Interrogative Form

Am	I	conducting	an experiment?
Is	he / she / it	conducting	an experiment?
Are	we / you / they	conducting	an experiment?

EXERCISES

1

Write sentences in the present continuous forms.

1. I / examine / some cells / under a microscope

I am examining some cells under a microscope
 + I am not examining some cells under a microscope
 Am I examining some cells under a microscope?

2. she / observe / the sky / through a telescope

She is observing the sky through a telescope
 + She isn't observing the sky through a telescope
 Is she observing the sky through a telescope?

3. they / create / a new tool

+ They are creating a new tool .
 - They aren't creating a new tool .
 ? Are they creating a new tool ?

2

Use the correct forms of the present continuous to complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets.

- Grace is looking (look) for some fossils in the excavation area.
- She isn't doing (not/do) any research on the Internet.
- I am preparing (prepare) the test tubes.
- Are you looking (look) into the sky?
- They are viewing (view) some soil samples right now.
- He is taking (take) the notes of the experiment results.
- I am not studying (not / study) on the project.
- Daniel isn't developing (not / develop) a cure for skin cancer.

GRAMMAR 2

Talking About Past Events

- ✿ We use **the simple past** to talk about past actions and events that started and finished at a specific time in the past.
- ✿ In positive statements, we usually use **'-ed'** at the end of a regular verb, but this rule does not apply to irregular verbs.



Affirmative Form

I
You
We
They
He
She
It

worked on a project last week.
read a science magazine.



Negative Form

I
You
We
They
He
She
It

did not / didn't work last week.
did not / didn't read a science magazine.



Interrogative Form

Did

I
you
we
they
he
she
it

work last week?
read a science magazine?



Short Answers

Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.
Yes, you did. / No, you didn't.
Yes, we did. / No, we didn't.
Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.
Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.
Yes, it did. / No, it didn't.

Time Expressions: yesterday, last week/month/year/Saturday, in 1957...



EXERCISES

1

Use words / phrases below to make sentences in the correct forms of **the simple past**.

1. Archimedes / invent / the water screw / many years ago

- + Archimedes invented the water screw many years ago
- Archimedes didn't invent the water screw many years ago
- ? Did Archimedes invent the water screw many years ago

2. she / work on / some dinosaur fossils / two days ago

- + She worked on some dinosaur fossils two days ago
- She didn't work on some dinosaur fossils two days ago
- ? Did she work on some dinosaur fossils two days ago

3. you / invent / a new device

- + You invented a new device
- You didn't invent a new device
- ? Did you invent a new device

4. she / formulate / a theory

- + She formulated a theory
- She didn't formulate a theory
- ? Did she formulate a theory

2

Complete the sentences with the verbs in the brackets in the correct forms of **the simple past**.

1. Canan Dağdeviren invented (invent) a wearable heart chip.
2. Aziz Sançar got (get) a Nobel Prize in Chemistry.
3. I think the compass changed (change) the world.
4. Yesterday, I didn't complete (not/complete) my project.
5. İlayda Şamlıgil graduated (graduate) high-school in Istanbul.
6. Did you conduct (conduct) an experiment?
7. Did Edward Jenner develop (develop) the smallpox vaccination?
8. We didn't operate (not/operate) the machine last week.

3

Use the words / phrases below to write sentences in the correct forms of **the past simple**.

1. the / test tubes / be / full / in the lab.

The test tubes were full in the lab _____.

2. who / conduct / an / experiment / yesterday?

Who conducted an experiment yesterday _____?

3. where / be / Nikola Tesla / born?

Where was Nikola Tesla born _____?

4. Thomas Edison / and / Alexander Graham Bell / be / great / inventors.

Thomas Edison and Alexander Graham Bell were great inventors _____.

5. I / not get / the / test results / last week.

I didn't get the test results last week _____.

6. They / go / for / a / science conference / two days ago.

They went for a science conference two days ago _____.

4

Circle the correct option in each sentence.

1. Edward Jenner **developed** / **developing** the first smallpox vaccination.

2. Marta **didn't** / **wasn't** read a science magazine in the library.

3. Four researchers **was** / **were** in the laboratory for an important experiment.

4. Daniel **observed** / **did observe** the sky through a telescope last night.

5. Albert Einstein **had** / **did have** incredible ideas and theories.

6. What **were** / **did** the scientists do in the laboratory?

7. How many test tubes **were** / **did** you check yesterday?

8. Marie Curie **was** / **did** a brilliant scientist.

9. Our teacher **gave** / **given** us a science project yesterday.

10. I **didn't see** / **didn't saw** any interesting devices in the museum.

11. My two sons **weren't** / **wasn't** at school last week.

12. The famous scientist **dies** / **died** a few years ago.

GRAMMAR TEST

1. fossils / Marta / some / working / dinosaur / on / currently / is.

Which of the following is the correct order of the sentence above?

- A) Marta working is one dinosaur fossils currently.
 B) Marta currently is working dinosaur fossils on some.
 C) Marta is currently working on some dinosaur fossils.
 D) Marta is on working some currently dinosaur fossils.

2. 1. I didn't conduct an experiment last week.
 2. She did discovered a very important element.
 3. Did you knew Şehri Sude Kahraman's invention before?
 4. Stephen Hawking had many honorary degrees.

Which sentences are grammatically CORRECT?

- A) 1 - 2
 B) 2 - 3
 C) 3 - 4
 D) 1 - 4

3.



I'm look at some soil samples under the microscope right now.

The underlined word is grammatically WRONG. Which of the following words can we replace with it?

- A) to look
 B) looks
 C) looking
 D) look

4-20: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

4. **Grey** : What are you _____ ?

Demet : I'm operating the machine.

- A) do
 B) done
 C) doing
 D) did

5. **Derya** : Who _____ the discoverer of radium?

Nil : I think Marie Curie.

- A) had
 B) did
 C) were
 D) was

6. **Venessa** : What are the researchers doing?

Razvan : They _____ an experiment.

- A) conducting
 B) conduct
 C) are conducting
 D) conducted

7. Nora _____ some test tubes to perform an experiment in the lab yesterday.

- A) uses
 B) used
 C) are using
 D) using

8. **Çağla** : _____ Einstein a renowned scientist in the past?

Rumeysa : Yes, sure. He was a well-known scientist.

- A) Did
 B) Does
 C) Is
 D) Was

9. **Kinem** : What was Edward Jenner famous for?

Firat : He _____ the first smallpox vaccination.

- A) developed
 B) developing
 C) develops
 D) is developing

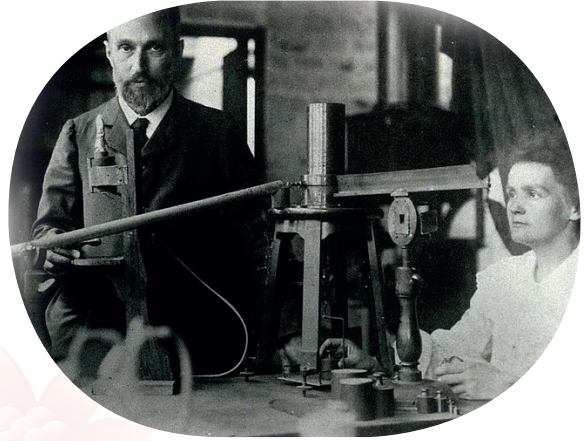
10. Oktay Sinanoğlu _____ in 2015 in the USA.

- A) die
 B) died
 C) did died
 D) dies

READING

A BRILLIANT SCIENTIST IN HISTORY

Marie Curie was born in Warsaw, Poland in 1867. She was the youngest of five children in the family. She was the child of two teachers. She learnt how to read and write at an early age. She was a bright student, and she always did well at school. She studied very hard to be successful. When Marie was ten, her oldest sister died because of a serious illness. She lost her mother two years after her sister's death. After graduating from high school, Marie moved to Paris, France to study at the University of Sorbonne in 1891. She read lots of books related to Math and Physics because her aim was to become a successful scientist. After three years, she had her



LEARN STEP BY STEP

degree in Physics. Marie met her husband Pierre Curie at university in 1894. They got married a year later. Marie conducted many experiments with her husband in a science lab. They discovered two elements called polonium and radium. Marie was the first female scientist to receive a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1903.

1. There IS NO information in the passage about Marie's _____ .

- A) childhood
- B) place of death
- C) parents' professions
- D) education

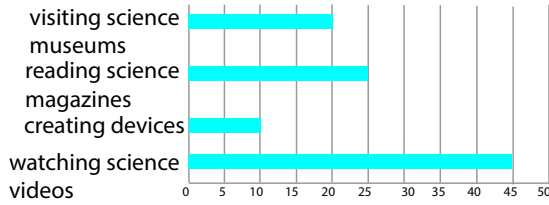
2. According to the text, Marie Curie _____ .

- A) had a difficult childhood
- B) wasn't very successful at school
- C) died in Warsaw, Poland
- D) didn't work with her husband

3. Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

- A) How old was she when her mother died?
- B) Why did she move to France?
- C) When did she start to work with Pierre Curie?
- D) What did she do after she finished high school?

1. The chart below shows the results of a survey about some teenagers' interests in science.



Which of the following is CORRECT according to the chart?

- A) Most teenagers are keen on designing devices.
 B) Visiting museums is the least popular activity.
 C) Most teenagers follow scientific developments by watching science videos.
 D) Reading science magazines is less popular than creating devices.
2. (I) Oktay Sinanoğlu was born in Italy in 1935. (II) He became the youngest professor in the world when he was 28. (III) There are a lot of important scientists in the USA. (IV) He was internationally known as 'The Turkish Einstein'.

Which sentence is ODD in the text?

- A) I B) II C) III D) IV

- 3.



The _____ of microbe belongs to Akşemseddin.

Our daily life changed with the _____ smart phones.



Marconi is the _____ of the radio.

Which of the following words DOES NOT complete one of the sentences above?

- A) discoverer B) discovery
 C) inventor D) invention

- 4.

Name	Thomas Edison
_____	Light Bulb
_____	American
_____	Physicist and Mathematician

There IS NO information about his _____.

Complete the sentence according to the table above.

- A) nationality B) invention
 C) education D) professions

- 5.



Kate : _____?

Susan : Well, in my opinion, he was a brilliant scientist in history.

Kate : _____?

Susan : I think his Theory of Relativity because it is still one of the most important theories.

Kate : _____?

Susan : He won the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1921.

Which of the following questions DOES NOT Kate ask Susan?

- A) What do you think about Albert Einstein
 B) Did he receive any awards
 C) What is his best scientific achievement
 D) Why did he get the Nobel Prize

6.



Rüzgar

I think the Laserphaco Probe is a great invention because it dissolves cataracts in a painless way. Patricia Bath was the inventor of this amazing device. The Laser Probe is used internationally to treat cataracts.

In the passage, there IS NO information about Patricia Bath's invention's _____ .

- A) date
- B) name
- C) function
- D) importance

7.

Rabies vaccine>	1885>	Louis Pasteur
The Computer>	1943>	J. Presper Eckert
The Dishwasher>	1886>	Josephine Garis Cochran
The walking stick>	1921>	James Biggs

Which statement is CORRECT according to the information above?

- A) Louis Pasteur improved transportation in the world.
- B) J. Presper Eckert's invention isn't important in today's world.
- C) Josephine Garis Cochran invented a machine in medicine.
- D) James Biggs' invention is about a physical disability.

8.



Aziz Sançar was born in Mardin in 1946. He is a renowned Turkish academician, biochemist, molecular biologist and scientist in the world. He conducts research on some diseases like cancer. He received the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 2015 because of his studies of DNA repair.

Which question IS NOT answered in the text?

- A) How many professions has he got?
- B) Why did he get the Nobel Prize?
- C) What is he currently doing?
- D) Where was he born?

9.



Ollie

Louis Pasteur developed the first rabies vaccine in 1885. In my opinion, it's one of the most important scientific achievements.



Lela

To me, the tyre is the most important invention in the world because we can travel everywhere easily.

I think the dishwasher is a ground-breaking invention. Josephine Garis Cochran is the inventor of this amazing machine.



Andrew

The Chinese invented the first magnetic compass long time ago. Now, we use GPS for navigation.



Terry

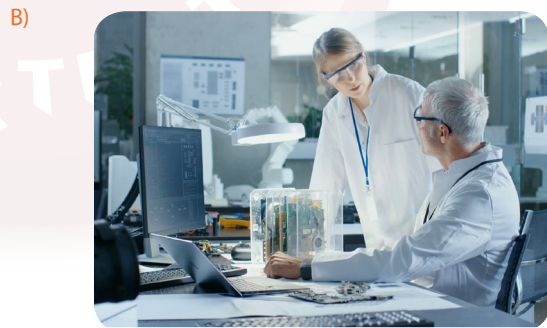
Who is talking about a scientific achievement in medicine?

- A) Ollie B) Andrew C) Lela D) Terry

10. The table below shows the current activities of four researchers.

	Conducting an experiment	Doing research	Looking for fossils	Operating a machine
Simon	✗	✓	✗	✗
Alex	✓	✗	✗	✗
Steve	✗	✗	✗	✓
Mario	✗	✗	✓	✗

Which of the following picture is about Alex?



NATURAL FORCES

When the last tree has been cut down, the last fish caught, the last river poisoned, only then will we realize that one cannot eat money.

Cree Indian Proverb



We are going to learn :

- 📌 making predictions about future
- 📌 giving reasons and results

UNIT 10

UNIT 10

NATURAL FORCES

Common Expressions



What do you mean?

We can't cope with this.

How often do you recycle trash?

Do you think there will be a water shortage?

Yes, there won't be enough water.

No, there will be a lot of rain in the future.

What are your predictions about natural disasters?

What should people do to save nature?

What happens if people destroy forests?

What can we do to slow down global warming?

I think we will have a water shortage in the future.

Because we waste too much water.

I think there will be serious droughts.

We should stop wasting water sources.

Schools should educate students to use less water.

We should plant more trees to save the future of the Earth.

So many animals and plants will become extinct in the future.

What are the reasons of it?

What are the results of it

Ne demek istiyorsun?

Biz bununla başa çıkamayız.

Ne sıklıkla çöplerin geri dönüşümünü yaparsın?

Sence su kıtlığı olacak mı?

Evet, yeterince su olmayacak.

Hayır, gelecekte çok yağmur olacak.

Doğal afetler hakkındaki öngörülerin neler?

İnsanlar doğayı kurtarmak için ne yapabilir?

Eğer insanlar ormanları yok ederse ne olur?

Küresel ısınmayı yavaşlatmak için ne yapabiliriz?

Bence gelecekte su kıtlığı olacak.

Çünkü çok fazla su israf ediyoruz.

Bence ciddi kuraklıklar olacak.

Su kaynaklarını israf etmeyi bırakmalıyız.

Okullar öğrencileri daha az su kullanmaları için eğitmeli.

Dünyanın geleceğini kurtarmak için daha çok ağaç dikmeliyiz.

Birçok hayvan ve bitki türü gelecekte yok olacak.

Bunun sebepleri neler?

Bunun sonuçları neler?

VOCABULARY 1

NATURAL FORCES

volcano	→	volkan
earthquake	→	deprem
avalanche	→	çığ
tornado	→	hortum
landslide	→	toprak kayması
drought	→	kuraklık
hurricane	→	kasırga
tsunami	→	tsunami
erosion	→	erozyon
flood	→	sel



LEARN STEP BY STEP

EXERCISES

1

Write the names of the natural forces under the pictures.

1.



flood

2.



earthquake

3.



erosion

4.



tornado

5.



drought

6.



avalanche

2

Fill in the blanks with the words below.

volcano

earthquake

flood

tsunami

tornado

erosion

drought

avalanche

1. An active volcano may erupt anytime.
2. I think we should plant trees to prevent erosion in our region.
3. The magnitude of the earthquake was 9.3.
4. I think there will be a drought in this city because it hasn't rain here for nine months.
5. Heavy rain in Rize caused a destructive flood last week.
6. It is snowing heavily, so there may be a serious avalanche.
7. A powerful underwater earthquake was the main reason of the tsunami yesterday.
8. Violent storms usually cause a tornado.

3

Find the names of the 6 natural disasters in the puzzle below.

J	T	O	A	I	T	U	U	A	E	P	L	G	E	O	L	E
L	A	Z	R	Z	O	I	P	J	G	A	H	E	H	C	N	K
Z	P	A	M	W	F	Z	D	F	Z	N	W	M	U	H	H	V
A	R	T	J	E	I	j	E	X	T	C	O	K	R	H	N	V
I	W	O	T	S	U	N	A	M	I	J	A	K	R	S	I	E
L	R	O	J	Y	G	G	T	B	H	J	W	G	I	D	E	F
K	S	R	G	O	Y	U	S	A	D	S	X	N	C	S	N	P
U	W	D	P	G	Y	V	O	L	C	A	N	O	A	F	G	X
Y	X	R	I	W	J	J	N	X	U	L	T	N	N	K	K	C
R	O	O	T	K	T	O	R	N	A	D	O	V	E	A	Z	I
Z	G	U	S	P	P	L	A	N	D	S	L	I	D	E	Y	T
N	K	G	T	N	B	I	K	R	I	U	U	J	O	X	J	N
N	X	H	U	O	E	T	N	i	P	I	P	I	Z	S	R	L
G	T	T	N	P	U	O	V	H	Q	X	W	G	K	W	U	H

VOCABULARY 2

ADJECTIVES

intense	yoğun	renewable	yenilenebilir
dry	kuru	main	ana / asıl
enormous	çok büyük	specific	özel
significant	kayda değer	agricultural	tarımsal
destructive	yıkıcı	widespread	yaygın
dirty	kirli	misused	hatalı / kötüye kullanılmış
harmful	zararlı	local	yerel
recyclable	geri dönüştürülebilir	huge	devasa / çok büyük
organic	organik / doğal	powerful	güçlü
active	aktif / etkin	frightened	korkmuş
rechargeable	yeniden şarj edilebilir		
bottled	şişelenmiş		

EXERCISES

1

Complete the sentences with the words below.

- rechargeable bottled recyclable renewable active
 dirty harmful huge misused organic

1. We always use **rechargeable** batteries in my family.
2. Jack usually drinks **bottled** water when she goes out.
3. These chemical substances are **harmful**. Keep away from them!
4. One of the main reasons of erosion is **misused** agricultural areas.
5. People should use **renewable** energy to protect the world.
6. Your room is **dirty** and messy. You should clean and tidy it.
7. If we don't use **recyclable** products, the resources of the earth will run out one day.
8. It was a really **huge** earthquake. It's magnitude was 8.9.
9. To be more healthy, you should eat **organic** food.
10. There aren't any **active** volcanoes in Turkey.

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

1. Deforestation is one of the reasons for **destructive** / **main** floods.
2. I think there will be more **recyclable** / **intense** storms in the future.
3. We shouldn't destroy forests for **agricultural** / **powerful** reasons.
4. What was the **main** / **local** reason of the disaster in Florida?
5. The earthquake was truly **active** / **huge**.
6. To save nature, we should use **renewable** / **recyclable** products.
7. The survivors of the tsunami are still **harmful** / **frightened**.
8. In my opinion, people should eat **widespread** / **organic** vegetables.

3

Order the letters in the boxes to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

1.

i	d	s
m	e	
u	s	

misused

2.

c	i
e	a
t	v

creative

3.

t	g	i
h	e	e
r	f	d
n		

frightened

4.

i	d
y	t
r	

dirty

5.

c	i	o
g	a	
n	r	

organic

6.

a	c	i
n	f	s
g	l	t
i	n	

significant

7.

n	e	n
s	i	t
e		

intense

8.

t	l	t
d	b	e
o		

bottled

VOCABULARY 3

NOUNS

forest	→	orman	land	→	kara, toprak
result	→	sonuç	supply	→	malzeme
reason	→	sebeb	resource	→	kaynak
planet	→	gezegen	environment	→	çevre
glacier	→	buzul	lung	→	akciğer
rainforest	→	yağmur ormanı	rate	→	oran
extinction	→	soy tükenmesi	temperature	→	sıcaklık
storm	→	fırtına	disaster	→	felaket
source	→	kaynak	product	→	ürün
destruction	→	yıkım	trash	→	çöp
photosynthesis	→	fotosentez	rubbish	→	çöp
precaution	→	önlem	balance	→	denge
responsibility	→	sorumluluk	magnitude	→	büüklük (deprem)
topic	→	konu	wave	→	dalga
injured	→	yaralı	generation	→	jenerasyon / nesil
survivor	→	hayatta kalan	damage	→	zarar
municipality	→	belediye	coast	→	sahil
deforestation	→	ormansızlaşma	shortage	→	kıtlık
amount	→	miktar	study	→	çalışma
value	→	değer	source	→	kaynak
substance	→	madde	data	→	veri, bilgi

EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the nouns below.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> extinction | <input type="radio"/> magnitude | <input type="radio"/> shortage | <input type="radio"/> destruction |
| <input type="radio"/> precautions | <input type="radio"/> environment | <input type="radio"/> temperature | <input type="radio"/> resources |

1. I need to get some information about the extinction of dinosuars.
2. It's cold today. The temperature is below zero.
3. What was the magnitude of the earthquake last night?
4. It's important to use our natural resources carefully.
5. They had a meeting to talk about the destruction of the disaster.
6. I think there will be a water shortage in our town because people waste water.
7. We should recycle paper and glass to protect our resources .
8. Earthquakes are very common here. We must take all the necessary precautions .

2

Write the words under the pictures.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <input type="radio"/> glacier | <input type="radio"/> storm | <input type="radio"/> rainforest | <input type="radio"/> trash |
| <input type="radio"/> deforestation | <input type="radio"/> coast | <input type="radio"/> planet | <input type="radio"/> injury |
| <input type="radio"/> temperature | <input type="radio"/> shortage | <input type="radio"/> extinction | <input type="radio"/> substance |

1.  <u>coast</u>	2.  <u>storm</u>	3.  <u>rainforest</u>	4.  <u>trash</u>
--	--	--	--

5.  <u>glacier</u>	6.  <u>deforestation</u>	7.  <u>planet</u>	8.  <u>injury</u>
--	--	--	---

9.  <u>substance</u>	10.  <u>extinction</u>	11.  <u>shortage</u>	12.  <u>temperature</u>
--	--	---	---

3

Order the letters to find the words. Then write them in the spaces.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. ulrest | <u>result</u> | 9. anc bale | <u>balance</u> |
| 2. ponsibresility | <u>responsibility</u> | 10. duproct | <u>product</u> |
| 3. ursoce | <u>source</u> | 11. uvale | <u>value</u> |
| 4. eratgenion | <u>generation</u> | 12. ounamt | <u>amount</u> |
| 5. bisrubh | <u>rubbish</u> | 13. udsty | <u>study</u> |
| 6. plsupy | <u>supply</u> | 14. piocrt | <u>topic</u> |
| 7. vivsuror | <u>survivor</u> | 15. bstasunce | <u>substance</u> |
| 8. agdame | <u>damage</u> | 16. ronmeenvint | <u>environment</u> |

VOCABULARY 4

NOUN / ADJECTIVE PHRASES

natural force	→	doğal afet
natural disaster	→	doğal felaket
global warming	→	küresel ısınma
sea level	→	deniz seviyesi
heat-trapping gas	→	ısı tutan gaz
weather condition	→	hava durumu
water shortage	→	su kıtlığı
food shortage	→	yiyecek kıtlığı
climate change	→	iklim değişikliği
rescue effort	→	kurtarma çabası
rechargeable battery	→	yeniden şarj edilebilir batarya
renewable energy	→	yenilenebilir enerji
bottled water	→	şişe su
agricultural area	→	tarım alanı
agricultural land	→	tarım arazisi
local time	→	yerel zaman
earthquake emergency kit	→	acil deprem çantası



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the phrases below.

natural forces

agricultural areas

rechargeable batteries

earthquake emergency kit

climate change

water shortage

1. You should keep some medical supplies in your **earthquake emergency kit**.
2. People shouldn't build houses near **agricultural areas**.
3. The **climate change** in the world will have more serious effects on animal and plant species.
4. Tsunamis and tornadoes are **natural forces**.
5. It rains here a lot. I don't think we'll have a **water shortage**.
6. As an environment lover, I always use **rechargeable batteries** for electronic devices.

2

Write the phrases under the pictures.

water shortage

earthquake emergency kit

agricultural land

renewable energy

global warming

food shortage



renewable energy



global warming



agricultural land



water shortage



food shortage



earthquake emergency kit

3

Read the clues to solve the puzzle.



Across

- 4. a gradual increase in the overall temperature of the earth's atmosphere
- 5. the average height of the sea where it meets the land
- 6. a natural event such as a flood, earthquake, or tsunami that kills or injures a lot of people

Down

- 1. a piece of land which is used for farming
- 2. energy that is produced using the sun, wind, etc.
- 3. the official time in a country

VOCABULARY 5

VERBS / VERB PHRASES

destroy	yıkmak, tahrip etmek	explain	açıklamak
cause	sebepl olmak	witness	tanıklık etmek
melt	erimekl, eritmek	underline	vurgulamak
decrease	azalmak	include	içermek
release	salınmak / salmak	affect	etkilemek
change	değişmek	heat up	ısınmak
adapt	uyum sağlamak	suffer from	sıkıntısını çekmek / ...-den muzdarip olmak
waste	israf etmek	cool down	soğumak
educate	eğitmek	become extinct	nesli tükenmek
disappear	yok olmak	cope with	başla çıkmak / üstesinden gelmek
provide	sağlamak	take precautions	önlem almak
save	kurtarmak, korumak	shoulder responsibility	elini taşın altına koymak / sorumluluk üstlenmek
plant	dikmek	look for	aramak
produce	üretmek	slow down	yavaşlamak, yavaşlatmak
pollute	kirletmek	run out	tükenmek
increase	artmak	cut down	kesmek
damage	zarar vermek	switch off	kapatmak
create	yaratmak	turn off	kapatmak
recycle	geri dönüşüm yapmak	pay attention	dikkat etmek
leave	ayrılmak	get worse	kötüye gitmek
protect	korumak	get narrow	daralmak
warn	uyarmak	throw away	atmak
hit	vurmak		
reach	ulaşmak		
lose	kaybetmek		
approach	yaklaşmak		
threaten	tehdit etmek		
erupt	püskürmek / patlamak		
reduce	azalmak		

EXERCISES

1

Complete the phrases.

1. pay attention 5. look for
2. take precautions 6. cope with
3. run run out 7. throw away
4. switch off 8. cut down

2

Order the letters to find the verbs. Then write them in the spaces.

1. ludince include
2. erliundne underline
3. proaapch approach
4. reaincse increase
5. reasdece decrease
6. appedisar disappear
7. laiexpn explain

3

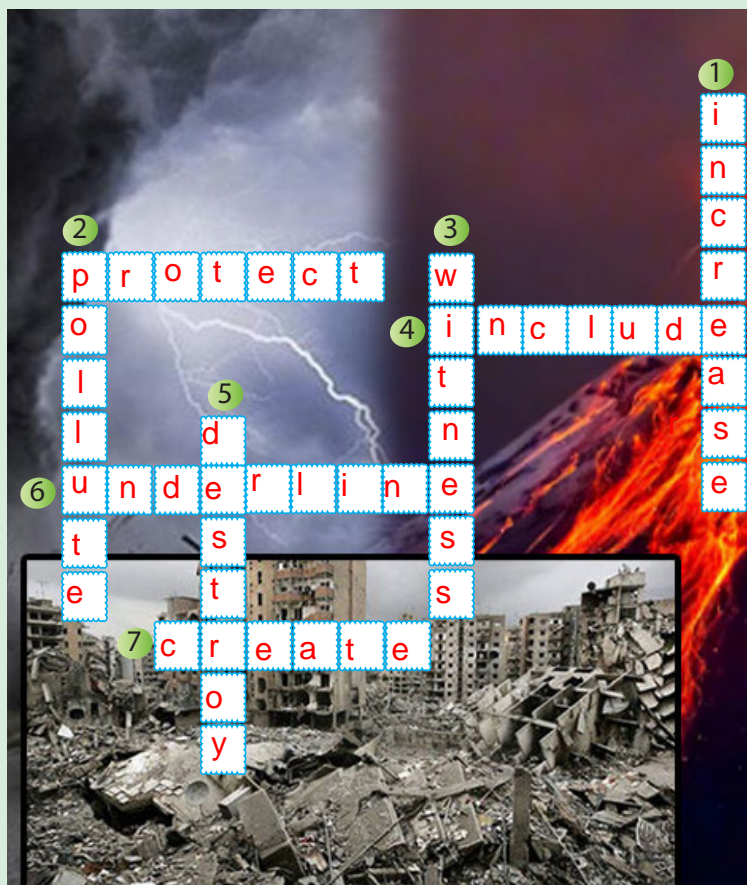
Fill in the blanks with the verbs below.

- throw waste educate affect reduce
 cause adapt plant cope recycle

- We should do something to **cope** with the air pollution in our city.
- People must never **throw** away recyclable materials.
- It's important to **educate** people against natural disasters.
- My sisters **recycle** paper and glass at home.
- I think it's extremely important to do something to **reduce** the effects of global warming.
- Matilda's children never **waste** water and energy at home.
- Heat-trapping gases and deforestation **cause** global warming.
- We should **plant** more trees to prevent erosion.
- How does global warming **affect** some animal species?
- It's not possible for some animals to **adapt** to cold weather.

4

Read the clues to solve the puzzle.



Across

- to keep someone or something safe from injury, damage, or loss
- to contain something as a part of something else
- to draw a line under a word, especially in order to show its importance
- to make something new, or invent something

Down

- to make something become larger in amount or size
- to make an area or substance, usually air, water, or soil, dirty
- to see something happen, especially an accident or crime
- to damage something so badly that it cannot be used

Vocabulary Test | Step By Step

1-15: For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. Releasing heat-trapping gases into the atmosphere is one of the main _____ of global warming.

A) reasons
 B) sources
 C) products
 D) shortages

2. You should wear protective gloves before touching these chemical _____.

A) lungs
 B) rates
 C) survivors
 D) substances

3. Penguins and polar bears can only survive in cold _____.

A) planets
 B) results
 C) climates
 D) precautions

4. Earthquakes, tsunamis and _____ are natural disasters.

A) studies
 B) droughts
 C) coasts
 D) supplies

5. Some _____ are melting in Antarctica as a result of global warming.

A) glaciers
 B) sources
 C) magnitudes
 D) substances

6.



William

What should we do to protect our planet?



Matilda

We should _____.

- A) release heat-trapping gases
 B) destroy rainforests
 C) use renewable energy
 D) increase water shortages

7. A destructive avalanche _____ a village in Russia last night.

A) erupted
 B) educated
 C) reached
 D) hit

8. **Wilma** : What should we do to save our planet?

Linda : We should _____ paper and glass bottles.

- A) disappear
 B) recycle
 C) damage
 D) waste

9. People should pay more _____ to the environmental problems in the world.

A) responsibility
 B) wave
 C) attention
 D) extinction

10. There are so many reasons for erosion. _____ agricultural areas, human factors and, deforestation are some of them.

A) Specific
 C) Misused
 B) Harmful
 D) Significant

11. It's always helpful to keep some basic supplies in your earthquake _____ .

- A) rescue effort
- B) emergency kit
- C) local time
- D) bottled water

12. **Terry** : What should we do to slow down global warming?

Rose : We should stop _____ .

- A) releasing heat-trapping gases
- B) protecting rainforests
- C) using rechargeable batteries
- D) saving water and energy

13. Some animal species _____ for different reasons long time ago.

- A) witnessed
- B) warned
- C) approached
- D) disappeared

14. An earthquake hit our region last night. Its _____ was 4.5.

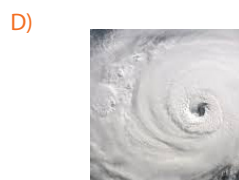
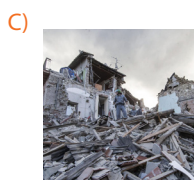
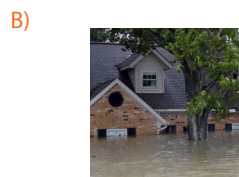
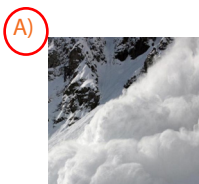
- A) generation
- B) balance
- C) magnitude
- D) temperature

15. Dinosaurs and mammoths _____ many years ago. They don't live on our planet anymore.

- A) became extinct
- B) coped with
- C) suffered from
- D) cooled down

16. Earthquakes, floods and hurricanes are some common natural disasters in the world.

Which picture DOES NOT show a disaster in the sentence above.



17.

- _____
- Erosion
- Avalanche
- Flood
- Tornado

Choose the best title for the list.

- A) Global Warming
- B) Climate Change
- C) Natural Disasters
- D) Rescue Effort

18.



Rüzgar

I think we can do lots of things to destroy our planet. We should recycle and use renewable energy.

The underlined word is ODD. Which of the following words can we replace with it?

- A) protect
- B) threaten
- C) damage
- D) underline

19. To suffer from global warming, we should use rechargeable batteries, drink bottled water and use paper bags.

Which underlined phrase is ODD?

- A) paper bags
- B) suffer from
- C) bottled water
- D) rechargeable batteries

20. _____ can be very destructive.

Which option IS NOT suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) Earthquakes
- B) Tsunamis
- C) Renewable energy
- D) Hurricanes

GRAMMAR

Making Predictions

✿ We usually use **'will'** to talk about future predictions.

Example: There will be more natural disasters in the near future.

✿ We use **'think'** with **'will'** to talk about what we think will happen in the future.

Examples:

- I think there won't be a water shortage in our region.
- Sarah thinks global warming will get worse in the next ten years.



Study the sentences in the boxes.

I think we will have more landslides in the future.

Marla thinks there won't be an avalanche.

Scientists think there will be serious droughts in the future.

- Do you think there will be more natural forces?
 - Yes. There will be lots of natural disasters.
 - No. To me, we will take precautions and we won't suffer from them.

We will run out all the natural sources one day.

Kerim will plant 50 trees and show show them to his children in the future.

- Will the Earth's climate be the same in the future?
 - Yes, it will
 - No, it won't.

- Will more glaciers melt?
 - Yes, they will because factories release heat-trapping gases into the atmosphere.
 - No, they won't because we will take some precautions to slow down global warming.

Giving Reasons and Results

✿ We use **'because'** and **'so'** to talk about reasons and results.

Example:

1. - I think there will be a serious drought in our city because it hasn't rained for ten months.
 - It hasn't rained in our city ten months, so I think there will be a serious drought.
2. - Schools should educate students because there will be serious droughts in the future.
 - There will be serious droughts in the future, so schools should educate students.

Should / Must

- ☞ We generally use '**should**' to give advice or talk about suggestions.
- ☞ We use '**must**' to talk about obligation and necessity. We also use '**must**' when we give a strong piece of advice.

Examples:

1. We should use rechargeable batteries at home.
2. You shouldn't waste water and electricity.
3. People must stop destroying forests.
4. You mustn't throw rubbish around.



EXERCISES

1

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of '**will**'.

1. **Julia** : Do you think rainforests will disappear in the future?
Michelle : Yes, they will.
2. All natural resources will run out one day because we use them irresponsibly.
3. Teresa thinks there won't be a serious drought in the future because people never waste water.
4. I think we will have a polluted air in the future because factories release harmful gases into the atmosphere.
5. I think our planet won't be a better place because people are generally careless.
6. According to some studies, agricultural products will decrease the next couple of years because of the climate change in the world.

2

Circle the correct choice in each sentence.

1. I think there will be more landslides **so / because** we destroy forests.
2. Nora **thinks / think** it won't be possible to stop global warming.
3. We should **use / to use** paper bags instead of plastic bags.
4. Trees provide oxygen for us, **because / so** we must protect forests.
5. Dinosaurs became extinct long time ago **so / because** the climate of the Earth changed.
6. **Does / Do** your sister think there won't be a drought in the future?
7. My parents and I live in an earthquake zone, **so / because** our emergency earthquake kit is always ready.
8. What **should / think** we do to save our planet?

3

Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1. What does Steve think about the future of the world?
2. I don't think there will be a hurricane in this area.
3. Global warming is a serious environmental problem in the world, so we must do something to reduce its effects.
4. Do they think there will be more natural disasters in the world?
5. We shouldn't destroy forests because they provide oxygen for people and animals.
6. I think there won't be a water shortage in this city because people always save water.
7. Jennifer thinks people will stop releasing heat-trapping gases in the future. She feels positive about the future.
8. I don't think our planet will be a safer place in the future.

GRAMMAR TEST

1-17 : For these questions, choose the best options to fill in the blanks.

1. Steve never throws rubbish around _____ he wants to protect his environment.

- (A) because B) so
C) should D) do

2. I _____ you should prepare an emergency kit for your own safety.

- A) thinking B) thinks
C) am thinking D) think

3. _____ there be a drought next year?



Nick



Bernice

- A) Does B) Will
C) Must D) Don't

4. _____ people must never damage forests.

- A) Samuel think B) We thinks
C) Scientists thinks D) I think

5. I think people _____ plant more trees to save the world.

- (A) will B) are
C) don't D) must to

6. We _____ some organic vegetables next year.

- A) are grow B) will grow
C) won't to grow D) should growing

7. According to some scientists, there _____ any tsunamis in this region in the near future.

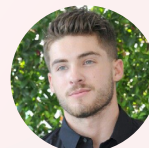
- (A) won't be B) should to be
C) must being D) don't be

8.



Angelina

Do you think there _____ be more landslides in the future?



Leonardo

No, I _____ think so.

- A) will / won't B) won't / doesn't
C) won't / will D) will / don't

9. Because of global warming, many animal and plant species _____ extinct in the future.

- A) will became B) will become
C) will becoming D) won't to become

10. According to some researchers, a hurricane _____ hit this city soon, _____ people should take all the necessary precautions.

- A) will / because B) won't / so
C) will / so D) won't / because

NAR TEST

GRAMMAR TEST

11. Fernando _____ think global warming will get worse.

- A) is
B) don't
C) isn't
D) doesn't

12. I always save energy and water at home _____ I care about our planet.

- A) so
B) with
C) and
D) because

13. **Jenner** : _____ the Earth's climate _____ the same in the future?

Susan : No, it won't.

- A) Will / be
B) Will / to be
C) Will / being
D) Be / will

14. In the future, I _____ my children to use eco-friendly products.

- A) will educates
B) will educate
C) will educating
D) educate

15. Volcanic eruptions can be very destructive, _____, people shouldn't live near such places.

- A) and
B) but
C) because
D) so

16. **Mathew** : Will people use renewable energy resources more in the future?

Pinar : Yes, _____ because they will understand the importance of them.

- A) they won't
B) they will
C) they do
D) they are

17. I think we _____ more extreme weather conditions in the next ten years.

- A) will having
B) will to have
C) will have
D) will has

18. Some researchers thinks polar bears and penguins will disappear because global warming has serious effects on them. People should do something to reduce its effects before it's too late.

Which underlined word is grammatically WRONG?

- A) thinks
B) because
C) will
D) should

19. I. Hannah thinks there won't be more natural disasters.

II. We should to do something to protect our planet.

III. Jack always saves energy at home, so he don't think it's important.

IV. Does your son thinks there will be less environmental problems?

Which sentence is grammatically CORRECT?

- A) I
B) II
C) III
D) IV

20. Kuzey thinks people _____ renewable energy to save the planet.

Which option is suitable to complete the sentence?

- A) must using
B) will to use
C) should use
D) doesn't use

READING



Saving Our Planet

Our planet is the only place for people to live on, so we must take good care of it. There are lots of things to do to protect our planet. Recycling, using renewable energies and saving water are only three important things to do. People should also use eco-friendly products and plant trees for a better future. However, some human activities cause lots of environmental problems. They cut down millions of trees and destroy forests for different reasons every year. Forests provide oxygen for us, and many wild animals need forests to survive. Releasing heat-trapping gases into the atmosphere is another serious problem in the world. This activity is one of the main reasons of global warming. As a result, the amount of carbon dioxide will increase in the atmosphere of our planet in the future. We must do something to reduce the effects of global warming before it's too late.

- 1. According to the text, _____ .**
 - A) there aren't any problems in our world
 - B) forests aren't important
 - C) heat-trapping gases harm our planet
 - D) in the future, we will have a better world

- 2. There IS NO information in the passage about _____ .**
 - A) the effects of deforestation
 - B) how to protect the world
 - C) some dangerous human activities
 - D) how to stop global warming

- 3. Which of the following sentences is CORRECT according to the text?**
 - A) It's too late now to save our planet.
 - B) Global warming won't threaten our world in the future.
 - C) There are things to do to save the planet.
 - D) Forests produce carbon dioxide for people.

1.



Marta

I think global warming will get worse, and there will be more serious extreme weather conditions.

People cut down lots of trees and destroy forests every year. Some scientists think that certain animal species will disappear in the future.



Rüzgar

What do you think about the future of our planet?



Jale

I think we won't have more natural disasters in the world. Our planet will be a safer place.

We will run out of natural resources because people use them in an irresponsible way.



Mario

Who is talking about one of the results of deforestation?

A) Marta

B) Rüzgar

C) Jale

D) Mario

2.

- ✓ The magnitude of the disaster was 7.9.
- ✓ Over 1000 people lost their lives in the disaster.
- ✓ The disaster damaged about 15.250 houses.

What is the name of the disaster above?

A) Drought

B) Hurricane

C) Earthquake

D) Erosion

3. **Benjamin** : Hello, ladies and gentlemen! Today, we are going to talk about global warming with a great researcher, Frank Waltz. Welcome to the programme, Frank.

Frank : Thank you very much.

Benjamin : Here is my first question. _____ ?

Frank : Unfortunately not. We can take some precautions to slow it down. I must say that we will have more extreme weather conditions. This means some animal species will disappear.

Benjamin : That's really bad. _____ ?

Frank : Well, there are many, but releasing heat-trapping gases is the most important one.

Benjamin : _____ ?

Frank : They should use renewable energies and public transportation. They shouldn't cut down trees. Protecting forests is very important to cope with this problem.

Which question DOES NOT Benjamin ask Frank?

A) What are the main causes of global warming

B) Will it be possible to stop global warming

C) Which animals will disappear in the future

D) What should people do to reduce the effects of this problem

4.

SAVE THE PLANET AND SAVE YOUR LIFE!

- ✓ plant more trees and save forests
- ✓ use recyclable products
- ✓ save water
- ✓ use energy saving lamps
- ✓ walk or cycle

Which of the following IS NOT correct according to the information above?

- A) We shouldn't waste natural sources.
- B) We should use eco-friendly bulbs.
- C) We should drive everywhere.
- D) We shouldn't cut down trees.

5. Lots of wild animals live in forests. They can't survive in different habitats, so people mustn't cut down trees and destroy forests. They are also necessary for people because they provide oxygen for them.

The text is about the _____ of forests.

- A) importance
- B) history
- C) extinction
- D) dangers

6.



Kuzey

Some glaciers are melting, sea levels are rising, our planet is heating up fast and some animal species are suffering because of some human factors. We should take all the necessary precautions before it's too late.

Which picture shows the problem that Kuzey is talking about?

A)



B)



C)



D)



7. The chart shows people's predictions about the future of Earth.

	Sude	Caner	Deniz	Tolga
We will have water shortages.			✓	✓
There will be destructive floods.	✓			
All animal species will extinct.		✓		✓
Natural resources will run out.	✓	✓		

Which sentence is TRUE according to the chart?

- A) Deniz thinks our planet will be a better place in the future.
 B) Sude and Caner think natural resources will be enough in the future.
 C) Tolga thinks all types of animals will disappear in the future.
 D) According to Sude, there won't be any natural disasters in the future.

8. The table below shows four different people's precautions to save the world.

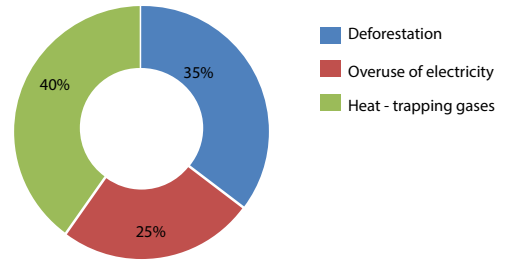
People	Precautions
Sally	use rechargeable batteries
Gibson	drink bottled water
Helen	plant trees
Julia	use renewable energies

Who tries to stop deforestation?

- A) Sally B) Gibson C) Helen D) Julia

9. The chart below shows some of the reasons of global warming.

The Reasons of Global Warming



According to the chart, _____ global warming.

Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.

- A) some human activities cause
 B) only natural forces can cause
 C) cutting down trees doesn't have an effect on
 D) heat-trapping gases has the least effect on

- 10.



Vicky : What should we do to protect our planet?

Daniel : We should use _____ .

Which option completes the sentence according to the picture?

- A) rechargeable batteries
 B) agricultural areas
 C) renewable energies
 D) significant substances

ANSWER KEY

UNIT 1

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	C	C	A	A	B	B	B	B	C	B	D	B	A	C	D	D	B	C	B

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	B	C	D	C	B	D	D	B	C	A	B	C	A	B	D	B	B	C	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A	D	D	B	D	A	B	A	D	A

UNIT 2

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	C	C	A	D	C	D	B	D	C	A	B	C	B	A	C	C	C	A	C

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	A	C	B	D	C	C	B	D	B	B	A	B	B	C	B	A	B	B	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
C	D	C	B	A	A	A	D	A	C

UNIT 3

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	A	D	B	B	D	D	A	A	A	A	C	B	D	C	B	C	B	A	D

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	D	A	A	A	D	C	A	C	B	A	C	A	D	D	C	C	D	B	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
D	A	C	D	B	B	B	D	A	A

UNIT 4

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	A	D	A	C	C	A	B	C	A	D	C	B	C	C	D	C	A	D	A

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	A	D	C	B	C	C	C	B	B	B	C	D	D	B	C	D	A	D	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	B	A	C	C	C	A	C	D	A

UNIT 5

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	C	C	D	B	D	A	C	C	A	C	C	A	A	D	D	B	A	C	C

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	C	A	D	C	B	C	A	A	C	D	D	B	B	D	C	D	C	D	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
D	B	B	D	C	B	C	A	B	A

UNIT 6

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	C	D	B	C	C	A	B	A	C	D	D	A	B	D	A	D	B	A	A

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	A	D	D	A	D	D	B	C	D	B	D	C	A	C	B	D	A	C	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
C	A	D	A	D	D	B	C	D	B

UNIT 7

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	C	A	B	C	D	A	D	C	A	B	B	A	A	B	B	B	B	A	C

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	B	D	C	A	D	A	D	B	B	C	C	B	C	D	A	C	C	B	D

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A	B	A	D	B	A	B	A	C	D

UNIT 8

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	B	C	C	B	D	D	D	B	B	D	D	C	A	B	A	C	C	A	D

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
B	C	B	A	D	A	C	D	D	D	A	C	D	C	B	D	C	D	D	B

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
D	D	D	D	A	B	D	B	D	B

UNIT 9

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
D	C	B	A	A	C	A	D	D	C	D	B	A	C	B	B	C	A	C	C

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
C	D	C	C	D	C	B	D	A	B	C	C	C	B	C	A	D	C	B	C

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
C	C	A	C	D	A	D	C	A	C

UNIT 10

VOCABULARY TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	D	C	B	A	C	D	B	C	C	B	A	D	C	A	A	C	A	B	C

GRAMMAR TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
A	D	B	D	A	B	A	D	B	C	D	D	A	B	D	B	C	A	A	C

UNIT TEST

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
B	C	C	C	A	B	C	C	A	C